Instruction Manual for Braille Transcribing

Fifth Edition, 2009

Constance Risjord
Literary Braille Transcriber

National Library Service for the Blind and Physically Handicapped

The Library of Congress

https://www.loc.gov
## Contents

### Preface to 2009 Edition

- General Course Instructions ................................................................. xi
- Use and Preparation of Drills, Reading Practices, and Exercises .............. xiii

### General Course Instructions

1. **Purpose and Scope** .................................................................................. xi
2. **How to Enroll** .......................................................................................... xii
3. **Equipment** .................................................................................................. xii
4. **Computer Program** ................................................................................... xiii
5. **Braillewriter** ............................................................................................... xiii
6. **Slate and Stylus** ........................................................................................ xiii

### Use and Preparation of Drills, Reading Practices, and Exercises

- Drills and reading practice .......................................................................... xiii
- Exercises ......................................................................................................... xiv
- Braille page margins and line length ............................................................. xiv
- Centering a heading ......................................................................................... xiv
- Page numbering ............................................................................................... xv
- Erasures ............................................................................................................ xv
- Proofreading ..................................................................................................... xv

### Grading........................................................................................................... xv

### Certification.................................................................................................... xvi

### Mailing Materials

- Mailing exercises to NFB ............................................................................... xvi
- Mailing the trial manuscript .......................................................................... xvi

## Lesson 1. The Braille Alphabet and Numbers

1. **In General** .................................................................................................. 1-1
2. **Braillewriters, Computer Braille Programs, and Braille Slates** ............... 1-1
3. **The First Ten Letters of the Alphabet** ..................................................... 1-1
   - Drill 1 ......................................................................................................... 1-2
4. **The Second Ten Letters of the Alphabet** ................................................. 1-2
   - Drill 2 ......................................................................................................... 1-2
5. **The Last Six Letters of the Alphabet** ....................................................... 1-2
   - Drill 3 ......................................................................................................... 1-3
6. **Numbers** .................................................................................................... 1-3
   - Drill 4 ......................................................................................................... 1-4
   - Reading Practice ......................................................................................... 1-4

### Exercise........................................................................................................... 1-5

## Lesson 2. Capitalization, Paragraphing, Punctuation, Numbers with punctuation

1. **Capital Letters and Fully Capitalized Words** ........................................... 2-1
   - Drill 5 ......................................................................................................... 2-1
2. **Paragraphing** .......................................................................................... 2-1
3. **Period, Question Mark, Exclamation Point, Comma, Semicolon, Colon** .... 2-2
   - Drill 6 ......................................................................................................... 2-2
4. **Hyphen** ..................................................................................................... 2-3
   - Drill 7 ......................................................................................................... 2-6
5. **Dash** .......................................................................................................... 2-6
   - Drill 8 ......................................................................................................... 2-8
6. **Numbers with punctuation** ...................................................................... 2-8
   - Drill 9 ......................................................................................................... 2-10
   - Reading Practice ......................................................................................... 2-11

### Exercise........................................................................................................... 2-12
Lesson 3. Quotation Marks, Apostrophe, Parentheses, Brackets, Adjacent Punctuation, Double (Omission) Dash, Slash

3.1 Quotation marks ................................................................. 3-1
3.2 Apostrophe ................................................................. 3-1
3.3 Parentheses and Brackets ............................................... 3-2
3.4 Adjacent punctuation ................................................... 3-2
   Drill 10 ................................................................. 3-3
3.5 Double (Omission) Dash ................................................ 3-3
3.6 Slash ................................................................. 3-4
   Drill 11 ................................................................. 3-4
   Reading Practice ......................................................... 3-5
Exercise ................................................................................. 3-6

Lesson 4. One-Cell Whole-Word Contractions,
Constructions for and, for, of, the, with

4.1 Contractions in General .................................................. 4-1
4.2 One-Cell Whole-Word Contractions (Alphabet Contractions) .................................................. 4-1
   Drill 12 ................................................................. 4-2
   Drill 13 ................................................................. 4-3
4.3 Whole-Word Contractions for and, for, of, the, with .................................................. 4-4
   Drill 14 ................................................................. 4-5
4.4 Part-Word Contractions for and, for, of, the, with .................................................. 4-5
4.5 Rules for All Part-Word Contractions .................................................. 4-6
   Drill 15 ................................................................. 4-7
   Reading Practice ......................................................... 4-8
Exercise ................................................................................. 4-9

Lesson 5. Whole-Word Contractions for child, shall, this, which, out, still
Part-Word Contractions for ch, sh, th, wh, ou, st, Ordinal Numbers

5.1 In General ................................................................. 5-1
5.2 Whole-Word Contractions for child, shall, this, which, out, still .................................................. 5-1
   Drill 16 ................................................................. 5-2
5.3 Part-Word Contractions for ch, sh, th, wh, ou, st .................................................. 5-2
5.4 With Slashes ................................................................. 5-3
5.5 Ordinal Numbers ................................................................. 5-3
   Drill 17 ................................................................. 5-4
   Reading Practice ......................................................... 5-4
Exercise ................................................................................. 5-5

Lesson 6. Part-Word Contractions for ar, ed, er, gh, ow, ble, ing

6.1 In General ................................................................. 6-1
   Drill 18 ................................................................. 6-4
6.2 Ing or ble at Beginning of Word .................................................. 6-4
6.3 Retaining Usual Braille Form of Base Word .................................................. 6-5
6.4 Part-Word Contractions Standing Alone .................................................. 6-5
6.5 Choice Between Alternative Contractions .................................................. 6-5
6.6 Syllabication ................................................................. 6-6
   Drill 19 ................................................................. 6-7
   Reading Practice ......................................................... 6-8
Exercise ................................................................................. 6-9
Summary of Contraction Usage .................................................. 6-11
Lesson 7. Whole-Word Lower-Sign Contractions for in, enough, be, his, was, were

Part-Word Lower-Sign Contractions for in, en, be, con, dis, com

Introduction to Short-Form Words

7.1 Definition of Lower Signs ................................................................. 7-1
7.2 Whole-Word Lower Signs for in, enough, be, his, was, were .................. 7-1
    Drill 20 .......................................................................................... 7-2
7.3 Part-Word Lower Signs ......................................................................... 7-3
7.4 The Lower-Sign Rule ............................................................................. 7-4
    Drill 21 .......................................................................................... 7-5
7.5 Part-Word Lower-Sign Contractions for be, con, dis ................................ 7-6
7.6 Contraction for com ............................................................................. 7-7
    Drill 22 .......................................................................................... 7-8
7.7 Preserving the Usual Form of the Base Word ........................................... 7-8
7.8 In Proper Names ................................................................................... 7-9
7.9 Be, con, dis and com in Abbreviations ................................................... 7-9
7.10 Introduction to Short-Form Words ......................................................... 7-9
    Drill 23 .......................................................................................... 7-10
    Reading Practice .............................................................................. 7-11

Exercise ............................................................................................... 7-12

Lesson 8. Whole-Word Lower-Sign Contractions for to, into, by

Part-Word Lower-Sign Contractions for bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, ea

More Short-Form Words

8.1 Contractions for to, into, by ............................................................... 8-1
    Drill 24 .......................................................................................... 8-3
8.2 The Double-Letter Signs and ea Sign ..................................................... 8-4
8.3 More Short-Form Words ........................................................................ 8-7
    Drill 25 .......................................................................................... 8-7
    Reading Practice .............................................................................. 8-9

Exercise ............................................................................................... 8-10

Summary of Contraction Usage Lower Signs ............................................. 8-12

Lesson 9. Initial-Letter Contractions, More Short-Form Words

9.1 In General ....................................................................................... 9-1
9.2 Exceptions to the General Rule ............................................................ 9-2
    Drill 26 .......................................................................................... 9-3
9.3 Preference for One-Cell Contractions ................................................... 9-4
9.4 Digraphs .......................................................................................... 9-4
9.5 Choosing Between Consecutive Contractions ....................................... 9-5
9.6 Proper Names ................................................................................... 9-5
9.7 More Short-Form Words ...................................................................... 9-5
    Drill 27 .......................................................................................... 9-6
    Reading Practice .............................................................................. 9-7

Exercise ............................................................................................... 9-8

Lesson 10. Final-Letter Contractions, More Short-Form Words

10.1 Final-Letter Contractions ................................................................... 10-1
10.2 More Short-Form Words ................................................................. 10-4
    Drill 28 .......................................................................................... 10-5
    Reading Practice .............................................................................. 10-6

Exercise ............................................................................................... 10-7
Lesson 11. Short-Form Words, Proper Names

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In General</td>
<td>11-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As Whole Words</td>
<td>11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As Part Words</td>
<td>11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Compound Words</td>
<td>11-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Rule for <em>after</em>, <em>blind</em>, and <em>friend</em> as Part Words</td>
<td>11-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dividing Short-form Words Between Lines</td>
<td>11-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Unusual Words</td>
<td>11-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short-forms In Proper Names</td>
<td>11-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drill 29</td>
<td>11-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary of Contractions Used in Proper Names</td>
<td>11-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading Practice</td>
<td>11-11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise  ..................................................................................................................... 11-12
Summary of Contraction Usage: Initial- and Final-Letter Contractions and Short-Form Words 11-15

Lesson 12. Letter Indicator, Speech Mannerisms, Divided Words, Transcriber's Notes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Letter Indicator</td>
<td>12-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drill 30</td>
<td>12-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distinguishing Names and Other Words from Short-Form Words</td>
<td>12-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Letter/Number Combinations</td>
<td>12-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>12-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drill 31</td>
<td>12-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speech Mannerisms</td>
<td>12-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syllabicated Words</td>
<td>12-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transcriber's Notes</td>
<td>12-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drill 32</td>
<td>12-14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise ..................................................................................................................... 12-15

Lesson 13. Symbols, Abbreviations, Personal Initials, Initialisms and Acronyms,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Symbols for Coinage, Weight, Measure, etc.</td>
<td>13-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drill 33</td>
<td>13-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations in General</td>
<td>13-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal Initials</td>
<td>13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initialisms and Acronyms</td>
<td>13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ditto Sign</td>
<td>13-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telephone Numbers</td>
<td>13-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postal Codes</td>
<td>13-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dates</td>
<td>13-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drill 34</td>
<td>13-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Format for Letters (correspondence)</td>
<td>13-12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise ..................................................................................................................... 13-13

Lesson 14. Roman Numerals, Fractions, Mixed Numbers, Decimals, Mathematical Signs of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Roman Numerals</td>
<td>14-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drill 35</td>
<td>14-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fractions and Similar Number Combinations</td>
<td>14-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed Numbers</td>
<td>14-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decimals</td>
<td>14-4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 15. Emphasis Indicator, Small Capital Letters, Ellipsis, Print Signs of Omission, Quoted Material, Termination Symbol, Order of Punctuation Marks and Composition Signs, Portions of Words in Different Typeface, Enclosed Portions of Words, Punctuation Marks Standing Alone or Enclosed

15.1 The Emphasis Indicator ................................................................. 15-1
15.1j Summary of Use of Emphasis Indicator .................................... 15-6
15.2 Small Capital Letters, Drill 37 ....................................................... 15-7
15.3 The Ellipsis .................................................................................. 15-8
15.4 Print Signs of Omission ................................................................. 15-9
15.5 Quoted or Displayed Material ...................................................... 15-10
15.6 Termination Symbol ................................................................... 15-11
15.7 Order of Punctuation Marks and Composition Signs ............... 15-11
15.8 Portions of Words and Numbers in a Different Typeface .......... 15-11
15.9 Slash in Partially Emphasized Expressions ................................. 15-13
15.10 Freestanding Portions of Words .................................................. 15-13
15.11 Enclosed Portions of Words ....................................................... 15-13
15.12 Punctuation Marks Standing Alone or Enclosed, Drill 38 ........... 15-13
15.13 Composition Signs, Portions of Words in Different Typeface, Drill 39 ................................................................. 15-14

Exercise ............................................................................................ 15-14

Lesson 16. Accent Symbol, Foreign Words in English Text, Anglicized Words, Corrupted Words, Coined Words, Specialized Terminology, Non-Latin Alphabets, Old and Middle English, Foreign Punctuation

16.1 Accent Symbol ............................................................................ 16-1
16.2 Foreign and Anglicized Words Defined ...................................... 16-2
16.3 Foreign Words in English Text .................................................... 16-2
16.4 Foreign Punctuation Marks .......................................................... 16-4
16.5 Anglicized Words ....................................................................... 16-5
16.6 Corrupted Words, Coined Words, Specialized Terminology ....... 16-6
16.7 Non-Latin Alphabets ................................................................. 16-7
16.8 Old and Middle English, Archaic Spelling ................................. 16-8
16.9 Drill 40.......................................................................................... 16-8

Exercise ............................................................................................ 16-9

Lesson 17. Headings, Reference Symbols (Asterisk), Notes, Source References, Credit Lines, Pagination

17.1 Headings .................................................................................... 17-1
17.2 Reference Citations in General ................................................... 17-2
17.3 Reference Symbols — Asterisk .................................................... 17-3
17.4 Notes ......................................................................................... 17-3
17.5 Source References ...................................................................... 17-5
17.6 Credit Lines (Attributions) ........................................................... 17-6
17.7 Pagination .................................................................................. 17-8

Exercise ............................................................................................ 17-9
Lesson 18. Special Formats: Poetry, Columns, Tables, Outlines

18.1 In General .............................................................................................................. 18-1
18.2 Poetry .................................................................................................................. 18-1
18.3 Columns ............................................................................................................... 18-3
18.4 Tables .................................................................................................................. 18-4
18.5 Outlines ............................................................................................................. 18-6
18.6 Menus .................................................................................................................. 18-6
18.7 Recipes .............................................................................................................. 18-7

Exercise .................................................................................................................. 18-8

Lesson 19. Literary Braille Book Format

19.1 Format in General ............................................................................................... 19.1
19.2 Preliminary Pages .............................................................................................. 19-2
19.3 Text Pages ........................................................................................................ 19-13
19.4 Summary: Order of Preliminary and Text Pages .............................................. 19-14
19.5 Book Broken into Units .................................................................................... 19-15
19.6 Chapter Titles .................................................................................................... 19-15
19.7 Volume Size and Division .............................................................................. 19-16
19.8Appendixes, Glossaries, Bibliographies, Indexes, Etc ....................................... 19-17
19.9 End-of-Volume and End-of-Book Indication ...................................................... 19-17

Exercise .................................................................................................................. 19-17

Lesson 20. The Trial Manuscript and Certification

20.1 In General ........................................................................................................ 20-1
20.2 Choosing a Book for the Manuscript ............................................................... 20-1
20.3 Formatting the Book ........................................................................................ 20-2
20.4 Beginning Pages ............................................................................................... 20-2
20.5 Accuracy and Neatness ................................................................................... 20-2
20.6 Erasures ........................................................................................................... 20-3
20.7 Editing ............................................................................................................. 20-3
20.8 Proofreading .................................................................................................. 20-3
20.9 A Letter to the Grader ..................................................................................... 20-3
20.10 Mailing the Manuscript .................................................................................. 20-4
20.11 Grading .......................................................................................................... 20-4
20.12 Appealing the Test Results ............................................................................ 20-4
20.13 Certification .................................................................................................... 20-4

Appendix A. Reading Practice .................................................................................. A-1

Appendix B. Alphabetical Index of Braille Symbols ................................................ B-1
  Alphabet and Numbers ......................................................................................... B-1
  Contractions, Word Signs, and Short-Form Words ........................................... B-1
  Punctuation and Composition Signs ..................................................................... B-6
  Quick Reference Chart ....................................................................................... B-7
  ASCII Braille Chart ............................................................................................ B-9

Appendix C. Typical and Problem Words ............................................................... C-1

Index ....................................................................................................................... Index-1
General Course Instructions

Purpose and Scope

This manual is designed for use in the correspondence course in English braille transcribing conducted by the Library of Congress, National Library Service for the Blind and Physically Handicapped (NLS), and for use by instructors of braille classes. The course is intended to familiarize the student with the braille system, with braille contractions and their usage, and with the rules of braille transcribing. Rules are set forth by the Braille Authority of North America (BANA) and published in English Braille American Edition (EBAE). EBAE became the authorized braille code for use in the United States as of January 1, 1959, and it contains all the rules of braille for general literature.

A source citation appears in brackets following each main heading in this manual. Citations that begin with a Roman numeral (e.g., XII.47) refer to the official code English Braille American Edition 1994 (revised 2002, 2007). Citations that begin with BF refer to Braille Formats: Principles of Print to Braille Transcription. See and see also references refer to sections within this book. Occasionally the EBAE rules used for preparing general literature differ from those in Braille Formats that are required for the preparation of textbooks. The indicator [diff.] following a section heading notes such a difference.

Great care has been taken to ensure that none of the sentences in the drills and exercises in this manual contains words that require the use of contractions not yet studied. While greatly restricting the choice of words and types of sentences in the earlier lessons, this practice helps prevent the student from acquiring the habit of brailling words incorrectly.

Throughout this manual examples are presented in simulated braille (dots reproduced in print). The student is directed to study them carefully. They show how the rules work in practice and also peculiar situations where a rule is inapplicable. When simulated braille is not used in examples, contractions are shown enclosed within parentheses.

Appendixes at the back of this manual contain materials useful as references throughout the course. Appendix A gives the correct print for the simulated braille reading exercises that appear at the end of the first eleven lessons. Appendix B is an alphabetical index of braille signs showing two ways in which braille configurations may appear: (1) when produced on a braillewriter or embosser where the dots are impressed from the under side of the page and appear as they will be read, and (2) when produced on a slate and stylus where the slate user creates the dots "in reverse" by pushing down on the paper with a stylus, working from right to left and then turning the paper over to read. Appendix C is a list of typical and problem words that shows print words broken into syllables and the same words in simulated braille using the correct contractions.

Most of the problems that are likely to be found in the transcription of general literature are presented and discussed in this manual, and upon successful completion of the course, the student should be competent to deal with these problems. However, no attempt is made here to train the student in the transcription of specialized materials. Therefore, before attempting to braille a textbook of any kind, the transcriber must be thoroughly familiar with the rules provided in the latest revision of the Braille Formats: Principles of Print to Braille Transcription. If called upon to braille technical material on mathematics or science, the transcriber first must study the
latest revision of *The Nemeth Braille Code for Mathematics and Science Notation*. The transcription of music must be in accordance with provisions set forth in the most recent edition of the *Braille Music Code*. Materials requiring the translation of computer symbols and notations are done according to the rules in the *Computer Braille Code*. These publications may be purchased from the American Printing House for the Blind, 1839 Frankfort Avenue, P.O. Box 6085, Louisville, KY 40206.

As the language grows and changes, so too must the rules that govern the production of braille. BANA meets regularly to review the rules and make periodic changes. When rule changes are approved, they will be incorporated into this instruction manual by means of replacement pages. Students taking the course by correspondence will automatically receive up-to-date material. Teachers of braille transcription classes should request copies of replacement pages for their students.

The National Federation of the Blind currently administers the braille certification courses under contract with the National Library for the Blind and Physically Handicapped. All persons using this manual are invited to submit comments, criticisms, or suggestions regarding it to the Braille Certification Training Program, National Federation of the Blind, 1800 Johnson Street, Baltimore, MD 21230. These will be studied carefully and given serious consideration in the preparation of any revision.

**How to Enroll**

Please visit [http://www.nfb.org/transcribers](http://www.nfb.org/transcribers) or call (410) 659-9314 (ext. 2510) to obtain an information packet explaining the braille transcription course and an application form.

**Equipment**

The following equipment and supplies will be required for use by the student:

- The latest editions of *Instruction Manual for Braille Transcribing* and *Drills Reproduced in Braille*, provided free of charge to U.S. citizens and residents enrolled in the course.
- The latest edition of *English Braille American Edition*, also provided free of charge from the NLS to U.S. citizens and residents enrolled in the course. At this writing, the latest revision is dated 1994 (revised 2002, with update 2007).
- A collegiate edition of any reputable dictionary less than ten years old. Online dictionaries such as [www.dictionary.com](http://www.dictionary.com) are also permissible.
- Braille transcription paper measuring 11 x 11½ inches. A good source for braille paper is the American Printing House for the Blind, 1839 Frankfort Avenue, P.O. Box 6085, Louisville, KY 40206. If paper is ordered locally, specify 90-lb. card stock with the grain running along the 11-inch dimension. (Note that braille paper is not necessary if lessons will be submitted electronically. However, the manuscript must be submitted on paper—see Lesson 20 for more information).
- A braille eraser, available from the American Printing House or from Howe Press, 175 North Beacon Street, Watertown, MA 02472. (An eraser is not necessary if lessons will be submitted electronically).
• A braillewriter, a 40-cell braille slate and stylus, or a computer using a direct-input braille program. Direct-input programs require the user to braille using only six keys, much in the same manner as when using a braillewriter. Translation programs, where the user types in the material on a standard keyboard and the type is then translated into braille, are not allowed for use in this course. Exercises must be submitted in hard copy (embossed) braille, or by e-mail with the electronic file as an attachment. Simulated braille (dots reproduced in print on paper) will not be accepted.

**Computer Program.** A six-key computer program called Perky Duck can be downloaded free of charge from [http://www.duxburysystems.com](http://www.duxburysystems.com). Instructions for use of Perky Duck can be obtained from its distributor or from the National Federation of the Blind. Other computer programs provide for the use of six-key entry, but if the program provides any automatic features such as running heads or page numbers, these must be disabled. All spacing, centering, and line breaks must be performed manually.

**Braillewriter.** While there are a number of braillewriters on the market, the Perkins brailler has been found to be an eminently satisfactory machine. Purchase information and instructions for its operation are available from the distributor, Howe Press, 175 N. Beacon Street, Watertown, MA 02472.

**Slate and Stylus.** If a braille slate and stylus are to be used, we recommend the 40-cell board slate that is available from Howe Press. This braille slate consists of two pieces, a hinged metal guide and a flat wooden board. The bottom portion of the metal guide has four rows of indented braille cells. The top portion has four rows of cutouts that fit exactly over the indented cells and serve as a template for the stylus. Two pegs on the underside of the guide fit into regularly spaced holes at the left and right sides of the wooden board.

 Insert the guide into the set of holes nearest the top of the board, with the hinged side at your left. Before inserting the paper, open the metal guide as you would a book. At the top of the board there is a metal clasp with two prongs on the lower piece. Place the paper well up over the prongs, with its left edge against the hinge of the guide and the 11½-inch dimension of the paper running from left to right. To make sure that the paper is inserted straight, keep the bottom of the paper exactly parallel to the lower edge of the board. Snap the clasp shut and close the metal guide over the paper. The prongs of the clasp hold the paper in place, and the holes made by the prongs make it possible to replace the paper in exactly the same position when necessary.

 The point of the stylus is used to press the paper into the indented cells, thus forming the desired dots. In doing so, hold the stylus in a vertical position, rather than at a slant, in order to ensure a clear, firm dot. Four lines of braille can be written with the guide in the first position. When these lines have been written, move the guide down into the next set of holes without removing the paper. Continue in this manner until the entire page has been completed.

**Use and Preparation of Drills, Reading Practices, and Exercises**

**Drills and reading practice.** Material in this manual is divided into twenty lessons. Lessons 1–16 each contain one or more drills, and the first eleven lessons each have a reading practice.
These are designed solely to give the student practice in applying the rules covered in the preceding section. Students enrolled in the Library of Congress correspondence course should not submit these drills to the instructor. The braille supplement, *Drills Reproduced in Braille*, which accompanies this manual, contains correct transcriptions of all drills. In order to derive maximum benefit from them, it is imperative that the student first braille the drill and then compare the results with the corresponding drill in the supplement. The reading exercises should be written out in longhand before comparing them to the printed versions found in Appendix A. For further practice, the print version of the reading exercise can be brailled and then compared with the simulated braille in the lesson.

**Exercises.** The exercise at the end of each lesson is designed to test the student's ability to deal with problems presented in that lesson and also to serve as a review of previous lessons. These exercises must be submitted to the instructor for examination and correction. Students enrolled in the correspondence course must submit each exercise to the instructor on braille paper or in an electronic file via e-mail. Exercises submitted on thermoform paper or in simulated braille printed on paper will not be accepted. Only one exercise at a time should be submitted. Those students who are taking instruction elsewhere need submit only the trial manuscript, as described in Lesson 20, to the National Federation of the Blind for certification by the Library of Congress.

Some of the lessons can be divided into two parts. Where this is possible, a note has been added indicating the proper breaking point. The exercise has then been arranged so that the first half of the exercise contains only items that have been studied in the first part of the lesson.

**Braille page margins and line length.** The Library of Congress requires that books produced under its sponsorship be transcribed on pages measuring 11½ inches wide and 11 inches long. This also applies to students of the transcription course when submitting exercises and/or the trial manuscript. Volumes with insufficient margins at the left side present serious binding problems; therefore, the Library of Congress requires a left-hand margin of at least one inch. The right-hand, top, and bottom margins should measure at least one-half inch. **These measurements allow for a page of twenty-five lines with 40 cells per line.**

In order to ensure proper margins and a clear copy of the entire braille page by thermoform duplication, the margins on a Perkins braillewriter, which has a 42-cell per line capability, should be set so that it is not possible to braille in the first cell at the left margin or in the last cell of the line.

All references to cell numbers (for example: Start in cell 1 ...) refer to the margin in effect. Therefore, when using a 40-cell line, cell 1 will be the second cell on the machine. A good way to set the margins in the brailler is to insert a piece of paper into the machine; push the margin release tabs (located at the rear of the machine) open as far as possible, and, by pushing all six keys at the same time, braille a line of full cells. There should be 42 cells. This practice allows the cells to be seen or felt and the margin tabs to be set in the appropriate places.

**Centering a heading.** With the exception of the exercise in Lesson 1, the first line of every page of an exercise should carry a fully capitalized centered heading, called a "running head." To center a heading, first count the number of cells that the heading will occupy. Subtract that number from 40 (the number of cells on a line). Divide your answer in half and that will tell you
how many blank cells should precede and follow the heading. When a heading occupies an uneven number of cells so that it cannot be perfectly centered, move the heading off center by one cell to the left, so that the extra blank cell is to the right of the heading. When counting the number of cells needed for a centered heading, remember to include in your count contractions, spaces, punctuation signs, and composition signs. Also, remember that contractions take fewer cells than the letters they replace.

A blank line should follow the centered running head only on the first page of each exercise. All other pages should have the running head on the first line and the exercise continuing on the second line.

**Page numbering.** Beginning with the exercise in Lesson 2, consecutive braille page numbers should be shown at the right margin on the first line of each page (on the same line as the heading).

**Erasures.** Erasures should be resorted to only rarely, and then they should be made with the greatest care. In order to execute a neat erasure, place the paper on a smooth, hard surface such as a piece of glass or a mirror. Place the tip of the eraser on the dot to be erased and gently but firmly press straight down. Then move the eraser in a circular motion until the dot has been completely leveled. Do not scrub the paper. Be certain that no adjacent dots have been lowered and, if so, reinforce them with the point of the stylus or with the braillewriter.

Because even good erasures are often detectable and confusing to the braille reader, *an erasure should not be made if it would result in a blank cell. Do not erase more than one dot in a cell. Do not erase at the end of a line or in a page number. If the grader can feel an erasure, it will be counted as an error.*

**Proofreading.** Careful proofreading is the key to becoming a successful transcriber. At first, a sighted student may encounter some difficulty in reading the braille that he or she produces. This situation can be helped by reading what has been brailled, letter-by-letter, and writing it out in longhand. This procedure will not be necessary for long. Soon the eyes will start recognizing clusters of dots as individual characters.

As an exercise is being done, proofread each sentence on the computer screen or while the paper is still in the machine. The exercise should be proofread again when it is complete. And finally, after letting the material rest for several days, the entire exercise should be proofread again. *The pages with errors should be redone so that the exercise, when presented to the instructor, is as perfect as the student can make it.*

**Grading**

After the instructor has examined each exercise, the student will receive a detailed report pointing out errors and making helpful comments and suggestions. Grading is up to the instructor's discretion. Depending upon the number and type of errors made, the student will be asked to resubmit sentences in which errors occurred, or the entire exercise may have to be repeated. When the instructor is satisfied that the student has mastered the material, a new assignment is made. In general, with the practice provided by the drills and the assistance of the
instructor's reports, it should be possible for students to submit an acceptable exercise on the first or second attempt.

Certification

After finishing the lessons in this manual, certification as a braille transcriber is achieved by submission of a thirty-five braille-page manuscript. Details for preparing the manuscript, and information about the grading process, are located in Lesson 20.

Mailing Materials

**Submitting exercises.** All exercises brailled on paper should be mailed to: National Federation of the Blind, Braille Certification Training Program, 1800 Johnson Street, Baltimore, MD 21230. The braille pages should never be folded or rolled. Enclose them in a padded envelope or in a large envelope with firm cardboard sheets the size of braille paper on the top and bottom to protect the braille. Electronic submissions should be e-mailed as an attachment to transcribers@nfb.org.

**Mailing the trial manuscript. The trial manuscript must be submitted on paper.** In preparing the trial manuscript for mailing, be sure that the pages are assembled in proper sequential order with the embossed side facing up. Then bind them securely together. A print copy of all of the front matter from the book chosen for the manuscript, a copy of all of the print pages that were transcribed, the letter to the grader (as described in Lesson 20), and the braille manuscript should be placed in a box or adequately wrapped to protect them from damage. Photocopies of the print are acceptable.
Lesson 1

The Braille Alphabet and Numbers

1.1 In General

Braille is a system for tactile reading and writing. It uses characters formed by combinations of six embossed dots that are arranged within the *braille cell* in two vertical columns of three dots each. A simple braille character is formed by one or more of these dots, and it occupies a full cell or space.

For convenience, the dots of the braille cell are referred to by number and correspond to the keys on a braillewriter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Braille Cell</th>
<th>Braillewriter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 ●● 4</td>
<td>UUU [ ] [ ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 ●● 5</td>
<td>3 2 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 ●● 6</td>
<td>4 5 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.2 Braillewriters, Computer Braille Programs, and Braille Slates

There are three methods of braille transcription—braillewriter, computer using a special braille program, and slate and stylus. The braillewriter and the computer work in much the same way in that they use six keys corresponding to the braille cell as shown above.

When a braille slate is used, the embossing appears on the underside of the paper. Therefore, the writing is done from right to left, so that when the page is turned over it can be read from left to right. For this reason dots 1, 2, and 3 are brailled at the right-hand side of the braille cell on the slate; dots 4, 5, and 6 at the left-hand side, as shown in the alphabetical index of braille signs in Appendix B.

There are also computer programs that translate print into braille. Only persons thoroughly trained in reading and writing braille should use these programs.

1.3 The First Ten Letters of the Alphabet

The first ten letters of the alphabet are formed by using the upper and middle dots of the cell, and they are the foundation of the braille system.

Memorize the following letters by their dot numbers and configurations.

- a 1 1 1 4 1 1 1
- b 1 1 5 1 5 1 1
- c 1 5 1 5 1 5 1
- d 1 5 1 5 1 5 1
- e 1 5 1 5 1 5 1
- f 1 5 1 5 1 5 1
- g 1 5 1 5 1 5 1
- h 1 5 1 5 1 5 1
- i 1 5 1 5 1 5 1
- j 1 5 1 5 1 5 1
Drill 1

Thoroughly familiarize yourself with the first ten letters of the alphabet by brailling the following words. Reading across, start each line in the first cell. Leave one blank cell (space) between words. Your work on this and all subsequent drills should not be submitted to the instructor for correction. Instead, check the accuracy of your work by comparing it with the correct braille form in the accompanying supplement, *Drills Reproduced in Braille*.

- acid
- acacia
- badge
- beige
- babe
- cage
- cicada
- deface
- dice
- ebb
- egg
- fad
- fief
- gag
- gage
- hag
- hajji
- hide
- hie
- id
- if
- idea
- jag
- jade

1.4 The Second Ten Letters of the Alphabet

The second ten letters of the alphabet are formed by adding dot 3 to each of the first ten. Thus, $k$ is formed by adding dot 3 to $a$, $l$ by adding dot 3 to $b$, and so on.

```
 a  b  c  d  e  f  g  h  i  j

 k  l  m  n  o  p  q  r  s  t
```

Drill 2

Practice the letters learned by brailling the words in the following drill.

- kick
- kneel
- lair
- llama
- manor
- melon
- mammal
- noise
- notice
- orange
- orphan
- popcorn
- pope
- possessor
- qoph
- rapport
- rascal
- sassafras
- tattletale
- tragic
- trio
- tort
- ticket
- tide

1.5 The Last Six Letters of the Alphabet

The letters $u$, $v$, $x$, $y$, and $z$ are formed by adding dots 3 and 6 to the first five letters. Thus, $u$ is formed by adding dots 3 and 6 to $a$, and so on. The letter $w$, dots 2456 (盲盲), does not fit into this pattern because Louis Braille devised the braille system in France in the mid-19th century, and the French alphabet did not then contain the letter $w$. 
Drill 3

When you have learned the final six letters of the alphabet, braille the following words for practice.

quiz ukulele ultimatum vacillate vaguely
wigwag wield weird xylem xebec yolk yew
zebra zombie zoological zygoma ooze maze

1.6 Numbers [VII.28]

There are no special braille symbols for cardinal numbers. Instead, the numbers 1 through 0 are expressed by the letters a through j preceded by the number indicator, dots 3456 (.:).

The number indicator is known as a composition sign. Composition signs, which are peculiar to braille, are configurations that, when placed before a braille character, give it a special meaning or designate a change in print typeface. They are necessary because the dots, or bumps, that represent braille letters cannot be enlarged like print capitals or altered like print italics. You will learn other composition signs as the course progresses.

Examples:

1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9

10  14  59  87  103  965
Drill 4

Practice numbers by brailling the following drill. Braille the numbers across the page as they appear in print. Leave one blank cell between the numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>23</th>
<th>104</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>58</th>
<th>77</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>01</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>956</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>549</td>
<td>476</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

READING PRACTICE

Read the following phrases and write them out in longhand. Do not submit this work to your instructor. Compare your work with the print version in Appendix A.

MOVIE RERUN
SAFE BET
ANTS MAKE ANTHILLS
BLUE UMBRELLA
NO VACANCY
WALNUT PANCAKES
AGREEABLY NICE
YULE LOGS
ZIGZAG ROAD
SPICY SALAMI
CLUB ENLAWLS
TORN CUFF
FREE GIVEAWAY
THE CRAZY COYOTES
BEFORE BEES BURST
TWELVE DOLLS
WED GIRLS JUMP ROPE
WH KETTLEDRUMS BOOM
ALL ALIKE
CUTE Quadruplets
FLEA BITE
WED OBSOLETE AUTOS
SCIOTIC IDEA
BEETLES SCURRY
AND TWO PLUS TWO
AERIAL VIEW
WISE OLD MAN
THE LIVELY LADIES
## Exercise

Prepare the following exercise and submit it to the instructor for correction. *Read down the columns.* Starting on line 1, begin each phrase in the first cell of a new braille line. Do not skip lines; you should have 25 phrases on each page. If you are using a braillewriter, be sure that you position every page correctly by pushing down on the line-space key (farthest key to the left) one time before you start to braille. Add your name in braille at the end of the exercise or as your teacher directs. (Correspondence students: For the convenience of our braille-reading instructors and non-braille-reading clerical staff, if you are submitting your lessons on paper or as an electronic file, add your name in braille and print at the end of each exercise.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>jazz tunes</th>
<th>olives or onions</th>
<th>quizzes puzzle me</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he prays daily</td>
<td>vivid pictures</td>
<td>3 labor battalions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feigns surprise</td>
<td>icicles drip</td>
<td>unbelievably calm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a frisky poodle</td>
<td>dull adjectives</td>
<td>home sweet home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fidgety filly</td>
<td>bridle a pony</td>
<td>fireflies flit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59 raw recruits</td>
<td>wise philosophy</td>
<td>brass knuckles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quixotic exploits</td>
<td>126 wet pets</td>
<td>mimic a madman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electric elevator</td>
<td>six textbooks</td>
<td>angry gangs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queue up</td>
<td>lovely velvet</td>
<td>12 pretty rosebuds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64 zany zebras</td>
<td>yuletide joy</td>
<td>prompt appraisal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build a wigwam</td>
<td>pretty anemone</td>
<td>bacon smells salty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 gigantic gorillas</td>
<td>true blue</td>
<td>10 nocturnal birds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attractive tie</td>
<td>blood circulates</td>
<td>extra axe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lovely lullaby</td>
<td>mutual respect</td>
<td>big felt yurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wry wit</td>
<td>80 hot dogs</td>
<td>78 brass bassoons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jubilant hallelujahs</td>
<td>a brook murmurs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gooseneck lamp</td>
<td>weird spectacle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xiphoid process</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 2

Capitalization, Paragraphing
Punctuation: Period, Question Mark, Exclamation Point, Comma, Semicolon, Colon, Hyphen, Dash

Numbers with punctuation

2.1 Capital Letters and Fully Capitalized Words  [II.9]

In braille, there is no separate alphabet of capital letters. Instead, capitalization is indicated by placing the capital indicator (dot 6) immediately before the letter affected.

New York  NEW YORK

When all of the letters in a word or letter grouping are capitals, the double capital indicator (dot 6 placed in two consecutive cells immediately before the word) is used. Like the number indicator, the capital indicators are composition signs. Examples:

NEW YORK  NEW YORK  YMCA  YMCA

In proper names where some letters are in lower case, a single capital indicator is placed before each capitalized letter. If part of the name is fully capitalized a double capital indicator is placed before the fully capitalized portion. Examples:

DeLeon  DeLeon  MacDONALD  MacDONALD

Drill 5

Practice brailling the following to familiarize yourself with the use of the capital indicator. Reading down the columns, place each name on a separate line.

Anita  OKLAHOMA  Faye
MY FAIR LADY  McWilliams  DUNE BOY
Adriatic  Claude  Leon
RADIO GUIDE  MOBY DICK  MacDANIEL

2.2 Paragraphing  [III.18.a] [diff.]

Rules taught in this manual are for material that is brailled without print page numbers (non-textbooks). The abbreviation [diff.] signals rules that are different from those used for preparing textbooks. See page xi.

Paragraphs in general reading material are indicated in braille by starting the first word of each new paragraph in the third space, or cell, of a new line. All following lines start at the margin. This rule applies even if the text is printed in block form (no paragraph indentions) with blank lines between the paragraphs. Never leave a blank line between paragraphs unless the print indicates a break in thought or scene by means of extra spacing. (This situation is discussed further in Lesson 19.)

Occasionally, for visual appeal, print uses one enlarged or ornate letter or all capital letters in the first few words at the beginning of a chapter or other division. In braille, this...
practice is ignored. Such paragraphs should be properly indented and normal
capitalization used.

2.3 Period, Question Mark, Exclamation Point, Comma, Semicolon, Colon [I.1]

The use, order, and spacing of braille punctuation should follow print practice except in
specific instances to be covered later in this manual. As in print, only one space (cell) is
left empty following commas and semicolons. However, unlike print that often leaves
two blank spaces following a colon and between sentences, only one empty cell is left in
braille.

Learn the following punctuation signs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Punctuation Sign</th>
<th>Dots</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>period .</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question mark ?</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exclamation point !</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comma ,</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semicolon ;</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colon :</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Drill 6

Practice brailling the following sentences. In this, and all future drills, treat each sentence
as a paragraph (starting each one in cell 3). Be sure to include the number and its period
at the beginning of each paragraph. Leave one empty cell between the period and the
beginning of the sentence.

Numbers in a printed listing are usually arranged so that the periods are in
alignment. This is not so in braille. In braille, the number indicator is placed in cell 3,
followed immediately by the number—regardless of the number of digits in the number.

1. I want six items: saw, nails, nuts, bolts, screws, tacks.
2. Miss Flynn, take a memo: Call Mr. Phelps at twelve noon; see Mr. Gray at six.
3. Is Mr. Dale a college graduate?
4. Ralph is sick; hail a cab!
5. My prophecy: victory!
6. Take my book; hold my coat! Hang up my umbrella!
7. Turn on a radio or TV at once; an unusual report is on.
8. Quiet, Aunt Em, I am afraid! An angry man knocks at my door.
9. My favorite play is MY FAIR LADY.
10. Does Jimmy want my old bicycle?
11. Help! Help! I hurt my leg!
2.4 **Hyphen [I.5]**

The hyphen is represented in braille by dots 36 (⃗⃗). As in print, the principal uses of the hyphen are to divide words at the end of a line and to connect the components of compound words or numbers.

2.4a **Dividing words between lines.** Students of this course, at this stage of the learning process, are expected to divide words between lines whether working on a braillewriter, computer, or slate and stylus. Wherever there is room on a line for one or more syllables and a hyphen, as many syllables should be brailled on that line as space will permit. No space should be left between the last syllable on the line and the hyphen. The hyphen, with one exception (see 2.4c), cannot start a new line. Examples:

- talka-  
- self-re-  
- tive  
- liant  

Never divide a single-syllable word, such as served, plowed, or tried. When dividing a multiple-syllable word between lines, division can be made only between syllables. Although *English Braille American Edition* (EBAE) Rule I.5.a. says that a word "may" be divided between pages, the Library of Congress does not recommend it. Most publishers and dictionaries do not separate a beginning or ending single-letter syllable from the rest of the word—and it is recommended that braille follow this example. Thus, words such as away and body should not be divided between lines. However, if a prefix or suffix is added to such words the division can be made, i.e., give/a/way, bod/y/guard. Note that this rule does not apply to contractions (one braille configuration representing two or more letters), which will be studied later.

When an apostrophe (to be studied in Lesson 3) takes the place of a letter in a word, the word divides in the same way that it would if all of the letters were present. For instance, the word behavior is divided be/havior. If it is written in dialect as be'avior, it is divided be/'avior not be'/avior).

2.4a(1) **Syllabication.** Correct syllabication of words is far from easy, and even dictionaries sometimes differ. Until the transcriber has learned correct word division either by memory or by educated instinct, it is advisable to consult a good dictionary. A collegiate edition of any reputable dictionary less than ten years old can be used for this purpose. When looking for a dictionary check that the dictionary selected gives word divisions—not all do. On occasion, major dictionaries will differ on where they divide a word. Also, syllabication can be affected by the part of speech used in a particular sentence. Spellers (small books that give only spelling and syllabication) can be used in many instances. Be prepared to support choices made regarding syllabication if the instructor marks a choice as wrong.

Following are a few observations that may be helpful in determining standard syllabication.
2.4a(2) **Long and short vowels.** In general, when a vowel is given a long sound in pronunciation, the vowel comes at the end of the syllable; but when a vowel has a short sound, the syllable includes the following consonant. Examples:

Long Vowels: de-grade    fa-mous    fi-ber    pro-fess    pu-nitive

Short Vowels: def-inite    fam-in    fil-ial    prof-it    pun-ish

There are some outstanding exceptions to this practice, as with short vowels followed by *tion, sion, or cial*, where the short vowel ends the syllable. Examples:

ambi-    revi-    spe-tion
          sion        cial

2.4a(3) **Parts of speech.** Some words are pronounced and divided in two different ways, depending on whether they are used as nouns, adjectives, or verbs. Therefore, it may be necessary to determine from context which part of speech is involved. Examples:

Long Sound: pre-sent [verb]    re-cord [verb]    pro-gress [verb]    pre-cedent [adjective]


Unfortunately, some dictionaries show only one entry for most of these words, and bury the alternative use(s) within the definition paragraph, so it is important to note the part of speech and the pronunciation when dividing them between lines.

2.4a(4) **Plurals.** It should be observed that plurals of nouns are not given in the dictionary if they are formed regularly. In order to divide words correctly it is necessary to know that when a plural is formed by adding *s* or *es* to a word ending in the sound of *ch, sh, j, s, x, or z* the *es* becomes a separate syllable. Examples:

match-    bush-    hedg-    dress-    box-    maz-
es    es    es    es    es    es

When an *s* is added to a word ending in *e* but does not form a new syllable, the word cannot be further divided. Examples:

miles    rhymes    tames    mis/takes    dis/likes
en/core    com/mit/tees    hopes    likes    schemes

Word division is discussed further in [Lesson 6](#).
2.4b **Hyphenated compound words.** Do not leave a space either before or after a hyphen in a compound word, regardless of print spacing. Whenever a hyphen appears at the end of a print line it becomes necessary for the transcriber to determine (1) whether it has been used to divide a word between syllables, in which case the hyphen is omitted in braille, or (2) whether it separates the components of a hyphenated compound word, in which case the hyphen is retained in braille. In either case, such words are divided at the end of a braille line in accordance with rules 2.4a and 2.4b(1). Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Print</th>
<th>Braille</th>
<th>Print</th>
<th>Braille</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>some-where</td>
<td>somewhere</td>
<td>self-</td>
<td>self-expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>expression</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.4b(1) **Divided between lines.** You will find many hyphenated compound words that are not in the dictionary. This is because when two words that modify a noun are placed before it, the words are often joined by a hyphen, as in *the well-dressed man*. However, if the two modifiers follow the noun, they are not hyphenated, as in *The man was well dressed*.

When a hyphen appears at the end of a print line and the compound word cannot be found either in the dictionary or somewhere else in the text it should be treated as a hyphenated compound word, and the hyphen should be retained.

2.4b(2) **Capitalized.** Hyphenated compound words and abbreviations are capitalized in braille as they appear in print. A double capital indicator placed before a hyphenated compound word indicates that all the letters of the compound word are capitals. Therefore, the double capital indicator is not repeated after the hyphen. For the same reason, the double capital indicator should not be repeated when a portion of any fully capitalized word is carried over to a new line. Examples:

```
ATLANTA-SAVANNAH RAILWAY

ATLANTA-SAVAN-NAH RAILWAY
```

2.4c **Disconnected compound words.** When brailling a hyphenated compound word, do not leave a space before or after the hyphen; however, print copy should be followed as to the spacing of disconnected compound words. Notice that unlike a connected hyphenated compound word, in a disconnected compound word a hyphen can start a new braille line as long as a space came before it in print. Examples:

```
five- or six-lane freeway

pro-labor or -agriculture vote

mid-June or -July
```
Drill 7

Practice brailling the following sentences, treating each as a paragraph.

1. Deborah has on an extremely pretty blue-gray dress.
2. I want an up-to-date plan.
3. Sell my five-acre plot? No way!
4. Maple-vanilla is my favorite flavor.
5. TWO-ON-AN-ISLE TALES is a picturesque book.
6. Philip is a five- or six-trip-a-week pilot.
7. Judge Biswell is a self-made man.
8. A semi-annual picnic is a swell idea.

2.5 Dash [I.6]

A dash is represented in braille by dots 36, 36 (⠣⠣). Note that this is a two-cell sign. You will learn other two, three, and even four-cell signs in future lessons. A dash can usually be distinguished from a hyphen in print by its greater length. However, since print uses dashes of varying lengths, it isn't always easy to differentiate between the two symbols, and it is sometimes necessary to determine from context which braille symbol to use. This can be done by keeping in mind that the two marks have different functions.

A hyphen is used to join together compound words or expressions. It is also used to separate the syllables of a word. Thus, in the sentence, "At-ten-tion!" shouted the six-foot soldier! hyphens separate the syllables of the command and also join the elements of the compound word.

A dash is used to separate segments of a sentence, and sometimes to begin or end an incomplete sentence. Dashes perform all of these duties in the following example. "I don't see what you see in—" she frowned—glanced at the door—and continued, "—him at all!"

2.5a Spacing. Print is often inconsistent in the spacing before and after a dash. In braille, no space is left between a mid-sentence dash and the words that immediately precede and follow it, regardless of print spacing. Example:

He is tall—six feet anyway.

She is tall...six feet anyway.
When a mid-sentence dash falls at the end of a print line but occurs in the middle of a braille line, the same rule applies—do not leave a space before or after the braille dash. Example:

My girl is sweet. My boy—
he is my joy.

One space is always left before beginning a new braille sentence. Thus, if a dash begins an incomplete sentence, or a fragment of a sentence or thought, it is preceded by a space. And, when a dash falls at the end of an incomplete sentence or thought, it is followed by a space. Examples:

Oh, my— Jessica wept.

He gave a big yawn. —too sleepy!

When a dash represents a pause and separates complete sentences, it is recommended that spaces be left before and after the dash. Example:

Hooray! We won. — Oh, boy! — I am truly happy.

2.5b **With composition signs.** Unlike a hyphen, a braille dash terminates the effect of a capital indicator. Even though a space is not left before or after a dash, if the words on both sides of the dash are fully capitalized, the double capital indicator is repeated following the dash. Example:

EYES ONLY—TOP SECRET

2.5c **Division between lines.** When a dash is preceded and followed by a word, it can either end or begin a braille line—but a braille dash can never be divided between lines. Example:

We all play baseball—or football.

[or]

[TOC -- INDEX]
Braille signs that are formed in the lower part of the cell (dots 2, 3, 5, 6) are called lower signs. Signs of punctuation are considered lower signs for they are all formed in the lower part of the cell. Unless a lower sign is in contact with another configuration that has a dot in the upper part of the cell (dots 1 or 4), the braille reader has difficulty determining upper dots from lower dots. It is for this reason that a rule was written that prevents lower signs from following one another without being in touch with a sign containing a dot 1 or 4. (This rule will be studied further in Lesson 7.)

When a dash is followed by punctuation and a space, it cannot start a new braille line—for to do so would violate the rule mentioned above. If there is not room at the end of the braille line for the dash and the following punctuation, the last syllable of the preceding word must be carried to the next line. Example (for the sake of this example, assume that only twenty-seven cells can be used on a line):

Correct: Take next exit. Oh, hurry—! Turn left, drive away.

Incorrect: Take next exit: Oh, hurry —! Turn left: Drive away.

Drill 8
Practice brailling the following sentences, treating each as a paragraph.

1. Travis is a happy man—or is he?
2. I may take a walk or— No, I lack an umbrella.
3. Liam walks two miles—or a mile if he feels lazy.
4. Miss Breckette, give Susan my notes—notes I made a week ago.
5. Lectures on sculpture, poetry, classical music – hip-hop is taboo – give visitors broad cultural opportunities.

2.6 Numbers with punctuation [V.28]

2.6a The effect of the number indicator. The effect of the number indicator is not terminated by intervening commas, colons, or hyphens (or slashes, fraction lines, or decimal points, which will be studied later). Examples:

1,000,000  8:30  1850-57

TOC -- INDEX
A space or a mark of punctuation other than a comma, colon, or hyphen will terminate the effect of the number indicator. Therefore, if a space or such punctuation falls in the middle of a number, the number indicator must be repeated. Examples:

1 800 534-8765       1910?-1917
999—2,000

2.6b Dividing hyphenated and long numbers between lines. Numbers that are joined by a hyphen and appear together on one line do not require a second number indicator before the second number. If, however, the hyphen joining two numbers falls at the end of the braille line, the number indicator must be repeated at the beginning of the following line. Examples:

1990-96       1990-6

Note: Because number-word combinations are common in print (6-pack, 7-Up), repeating the number indicator in a hyphenated number that is divided between lines makes it clear to the reader that it is a number that continues and not a word. If the number indicator had not been repeated at the beginning of the next line, 1990-96 could be confused with 1990-if.

Do not divide numbers of six digits or fewer and numbers without commas between braille lines. Longer numbers may be divided between lines only following a comma. Because the comma and hyphen signal that the number is continuing, a second number indicator is not necessary and should not be used before the continuation of a long number on the following line. Example:

7,350,500,000

2.6c Inclusive and connecting numbers. [diff] In braille an unspaced hyphen is substituted for a dash or a hyphen when print uses such punctuation to connect continuing or inclusive numbers. Example:

It is sometimes difficult to tell the difference between a print short dash (an en dash), a regular dash (an em dash), and a hyphen. A good rule of thumb is, if the words "to" or "through" can be substituted for the punctuation used between print numbers, scores, votes, etc., then a hyphen should be used in braille. Do not divide sports scores or voting results between braille lines. Examples:

Mayor Is Victor: 1,258–895

Rams won 14—7.

See pages 28-64.

If, however, a dash comes between numbers but its purpose is to separate independent clauses, as in We eat at 8:00—8:30 is too late, in braille the dash must be retained and the number indicator repeated before the second number.

**Drill 9**

Practice brailling the following sentences, treating each as a paragraph.

1. See catalog item No. 638.
2. Biology class: 9-11 a.m.
3. Mayor reviews 108-auto cavalcade at new race track.
4. Does 143 plus 7 equal 150?
5. Tell Tracy: 66 rods equals 1,089 feet.
8. Dial 1 800 468-4581.
10. Sunrays promote life—93,000,000 miles away.
11. Play piano sonata No. 16; twice!
12. My project requires a look at 1910-14 demographic records.
READING PRACTICE

Read the following sentences and write them out in longhand. Compare your work with the print version in Appendix A.

- Fans cool a big room rapidly.
- Take "airport approach six miles; turn left on "myrtle way.
- A kilogram equals 2,200 grams.
- Melissa turns five next week; Hannah turns six.
- An antonym is an opposite.
- Eat a snack at 10:45.
- They look at Lisa run.
- A nautical mile is 6,080 feet.
- We drove 700 miles.
- Sit magical music on bay view.
- Road.
- A black lace dress makes Jill look svelte.
- I may visit my uncle on my way home.
- Vicky: Give me a nice juicy apple pie.
- Laurie saw a five- or six-act play.
EXERCISE

Prepare the following exercise for submission to the instructor. Treat each sentence as a paragraph; that is, starting each in cell 3 with runover lines starting in cell 1 of the next line. On the first line of each page, center the heading LESSON 2 in full capital letters. Refer to General Course Instructions, page xiv, for help in centering. On the same line place the page number (without a period) at the extreme right-hand margin—do not include the word "page." A blank line should follow the heading on the first page only. Words should be divided at the end of a line using proper syllable division.

LESSON 2

1. Frank, a husky man, takes a horseback ride once or twice a week.
4. Did Uncle David buy a five- or six-room villa?
5. A small snack—fruit, biscuits, jelly, tea—is welcome.
6. Did Nick get on a No. 40 or a No. 42 bus?
7. Mr. Fitzpatrick collects textbooks; he has 200 on meteorology, 200 on Greek philosophy, 50 on music, 39 on sociology, 26 on botany, 43 on physiology.
9. 2007-08 academic progress at Fox Valley College surpasses all prior records.
10. Pick me up at 10:00—10:00 promptly!
11. Sign says: WELL-MADE WOOL COATS.
12. A GLOBE-DEMOCRAT full-page ad describes a model home at 8008 Sunset Drive.
13. On May 25, 1,436 cadets graduate.
15. Happy Valley, Montana, is a classy resort.
16. On July 1 - 3, Gettysburg has a mock battle.
17. Call Morris at 608 237 6531.
19. Rebels total approximately 3,500,000.
20. Look at NEWSWEEK, April 17 issue.
21. Total casualties equal 4,653,000.
Lesson 3

Quotation Marks, Apostrophe, Parentheses, Brackets, Adjacent Punctuation, Double (Omission) Dash, Slash

Now learn the following additional punctuation signs:

- apostrophe ' [or] '
- opening double quotation mark “ [or] "
- closing double quotation mark ” [or] ”
- opening single quotation mark ‘ [or] '
- closing single quotation mark ’ [or] ’
- opening parenthesis (
- closing parenthesis )
- opening bracket [
- closing bracket ]

3.1 Single and double quotation marks [I.2]

Quotation marks should be brailled as they appear in print. However, if double and single quotation marks are reversed throughout an entire print work (that is, the single quotes are used as the outer quotation marks and the double quotes used as the inner quotation marks), in braille these marks may be reversed in order to save space. A note explaining this reversal must be placed on a transcriber's notes page (to be studied in Lessons 12 and 19) at the beginning of each braille volume.

3.2 Apostrophe [I.4]

Follow print for the use of apostrophes. Example:

Sam's favorite is rock 'n' roll.

- When dividing a word that contains an apostrophe, see 2.4a.

3.2a Apostrophe with capital letters. Place a capital indicator immediately before the letter to which it applies. Therefore, if an apostrophe comes before a capital letter in print, the apostrophe is brailled before the capital indicator. Example:

"'Twas a brilliant plan," says Dan O'Reilly.
Do not repeat a capital indicator following an apostrophe in a fully capitalized word. Example:

O'NEIL'S PUB

Fully capitalized words ending in an apostrophe and a lower case letter(s), i.e., OK'd, will be studied in Lesson 15.

3.2b **Apostrophe with numbers.** When a print number is preceded by an apostrophe, the apostrophe represents a missing number, so in braille the number indicator is placed before the apostrophe. Example:

1990's '59

Plural numbers (1990s) will be studied in Lesson 12.

3.3 **Parentheses and Brackets** [I.3]

Follow print for the placement and spacing of parentheses and brackets. Examples:

He hit me (sob).
[See page 10.]

When numbers occur within parentheses, follow print except when a missing number is represented in print as a space. No space is left in braille. Example:

Susan Naidu (1966- )

3.4 **Adjacent Punctuation** [I.6]

When a dash that begins or ends an incomplete sentence is preceded or followed by a quotation mark or some other mark of punctuation, no space is left between the dash and the punctuation. Example:

Has Dan got a key— Oh, no—! He has Tim's. "—wait, wait!"

When an author's name or other attribution follows an excerpt or quotation and is separated from it by a dash, in braille no space is left before or after the dash. Example:

"True patriots repudiate tyrannical dictators." — J. Wise
Drill 10

Practice brailling the following sentences, treating each as a paragraph. Braille the quotation marks and other punctuation in the same sequence as they appear in print.

1. "I love my new home; twelve nice big rooms!” he exclaims.
2. Jimmie (a husky boy, age twelve) ate a huge apple pie.
3. A girl wrote on a slate: “I love all animals, wild or tame.”
4. 'Tis true, I love rock 'n' roll.
5. “If Adam sees ‘Hamlet,’ I hope he'll take adequate notes,” wrote Aunt Lucy.
6. All budget items [see Joe's report on fiscal policies] presuppose a rigid economy.
7. ‘Damon irritates me,’ Raymond wrote Roseanne; ‘he calls me “ignorant”’!
8. An 1890's culture seems unique.
9. A '78 truck is old.

3.5 Double (Omission) Dash [1.6a]

When in print an extended line is used to indicate that something has been omitted, such as a word, partial word, name, number, or a blank to be filled in, dots 36, 36, 36, 36 (----) are used. This is referred to as a braille double dash or the "omission" dash for it is used only when something is omitted. When the braille omission dash represents a whole word it is spaced and punctuated as a word. Example:

Two plus six equals ______.

Is Ms. —— a private detective?

When the omission dash represents missing letters within a word, no space is left before or after it and the other letters of the word. Example:

Mr. G—t is a spy!

When in print hyphens rather than an extended line are used to represent missing letters, an equal number of unspaced hyphens are used in braille. Example:

Mr. G-----t is a spy!

[Other print signs of omission will be studied in Lesson 15.]
3.6 Slash [VII.28.e]

The diagonal slash is also known as a virgule or solidus. When such a mark is used between print abbreviations, words, or numbers, this sign is represented in braille by dots 456, 34 (\:/\:). This symbol should be spaced as in print, and listed on the special symbols page (to be studied in Lesson 19).

s/he  
Mr/s  

3.6a Composition signs with the slash. A slash terminates the effect of a composition sign, therefore, when a slash occurs between two capitalized or italicized words or abbreviations, the appropriate capital or italic indicator (to be studied in Lesson 15) is repeated before the second word or abbreviation. Examples:

USOM/APO  
TAN/cj  

3.6b Numbers with the slash. The slash does not terminate the effect of a number indicator. When a slash occurs between numbers, the number indicator is not repeated. (Fractions, which have different rules, will be studied in Lesson 14.) Example:

9/11  

3.6c Dividing between lines. When a slash occurs between words or letter groupings and there is not room on the braille line for both, the expression may be divided only if there is room on the first line for the first word or letter grouping, the slash, and a hyphen. Example:

AFL/CIO  

Drill 11

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. Sudan has a dry climate; ______ is wet.
2. Dad's new/old philosophy is a puzzle.
3. "He is a d--n fool!"
5. M____’s record is poor.
6. Mr. ______ uses an alias.
Reading Practice

Practice your braille reading skills by reading the following sentences and writing them out in longhand. Compare your work with the print version in Appendix A.

Kim loves colors: rose, cobalt blue, tuch deep purple, orange.

If it was a fair trade: tam reports.

My boss says John only has a bad record.

Hannah has a six-week-old Siamese cat.

Sodium nitrate makes rocket propellants.

Ianna says really has a cute baby boy.

Tell me this were only a secret recipe.

Put on a happy face.

Jane says Marvin is a good house at times places where.

Sodium nitrate makes rocket propellants.

Twelve cases sold: only six left.

Rob's dog: wally baba, is a twelve-week-old puppy.

Endangered species visitors at our world's natural museum exhibit July 1-12.
EXERCISE

Prepare the following sentences for submission to the instructor.

LESSON 3

1. John asks: “Did I make Mom mad at me, Dad? I didn't want to.”
2. Joe (a grumpy man) seldom smiles; Joe's wife (luckily) seems happy.
3. “I'm late—buses simply crawl on slick, icy roads,” apologizes Paul.
4. “Oh, don't play silly games,” he snaps, “let's look at a video.”
5. Is Egypt an equatorial region? [See African map.]
6. Let's take a swim at— Oh, no, I left my swimsuit at home.
7. “Practice Poe's poem ‘Annabel Lee,’” Dr. Johnson told Tom's dramatics class.
8. My nephew, Bruce, is on a five- or six-week trip abroad.
9. “’Tis true, Juanita,” spoke Joseph sadly, “we move next week.”
10. We meet at Mr. —--'s twice a week. We plot espionage.
12. Dalai Lama (1936- ), Tibet's hope, visits Canada.
13. If Major Morris is correct—I hope he is—Bill flies home next autumn.
14. I hate a mid-April or -May cold spell.
15. Tom B------ is a d--n idiot if he doesn't take John's old job.
16. Semi-circles make half-moons.
17. “‘Give me a home run or give me a triple” is my motto,’ says Spillville's cocky second baseman.
18. Franz is a born musician—plays well on a piano, an electric organ (pipe organ, too), a cello, trumpet, or drums.
19. We saw OILY O'NEILL'S ESCAPADES at a local movie.
20. — oh, I'm sorry!
22. (Dudley left home prematurely. He wrote: my aunt's ideosyncrasies [sic] drove me nuts!)
23. "We'll visit Alaska next July; Memphis is too hot," agrees Danielle.
24. 18,000,079 plus 6,956 plus 3,721 equals _____.
25. Look at my ’38 antique Buick.
Lesson 4

One-Cell Whole-Word Contractions
Constructions for and, for, of, the, with

4.1 Contractions in General

To save space and facilitate reading, certain groups of letters appearing frequently in the English language are represented in braille by special characters known as contractions or signs. These signs may utilize one or two cells, and they may represent whole words, parts of words, or both.

Contractions that have the same or similar rules governing them are grouped together and given a name, as in the following section that discusses one-cell whole-word contractions. It is important that the names of these groupings be remembered because they will be referred to throughout the course.

4.2 One-Cell Whole-Word Contractions (Alphabet Contractions) [XI.36]

The first type of contraction to be discussed is the one-cell whole-word sign that is represented by a single letter of the alphabet. Following is a complete list of these contractions, which should be thoroughly memorized.

b but h have p people v very

c can j just q quite w will
d do k knowledge r rather x it
e every l like s so y you
f from m more t that z as
g go n not u us

Note that, except for it and as, all these words are represented by their initial letters. Because the letters a, i, and o are also single-letter words in themselves, they cannot be used as contractions for other words.

Use these contractions to represent the words for which they stand, regardless of the part of speech involved. They are also used to represent whole proper names, such as “Will Rogers” and “Thomas More.” There is an exception to this rule: when the words do and so refer to the notes in the musical scale, the contractions d and s are not used.

It must be emphasized that these contractions can be used to represent whole words only. Thus, c standing alone reads can; but c cannot be used as a part word to represent can in canopy because this would be read as the word copy. Similarly, x cannot be used for it in merit and h cannot be used for have in haven’t.

The letter s cannot be added to any of these contractions to form the plural. Thus, the plural of will is brailled wills, not ws.
• Note: An apparent exception to this rule is the use of the contraction for *it* in *its*. This word is considered a short-form word that will be studied further in **Lesson 11**.

**Drill 12**

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. You may eat more ravioli if you desire, but you will not like it.
2. Can boys from Camp Quail play baseball on that field every week?
3. Do not set that donut on my bookcase.
4. I am not so very well, as you can see.
5. He is a just man, but not very humane.
6. William's knowledge on that subject is rather vague.
7. So few people like that petty politician—he will surely lose.
8. Ronald can play do, re, mi quite well.
9. Like it or not, we will visit Mr. More next week.
10. Go away, Will — I do not like you.
11. Let us have two sweets.

**4.2a With an apostrophe.** These contractions are used when followed by the apostrophe in the following combinations only:

- **c's** for **can's**
- **t'd** for **that'd**
- **x'd** for **it'd**
- **y'll** for **you'll**
- **c't** for **can't**
- **t'll** for **that'll**
- **x'll** for **it'll**
- **y're** for **you're**
- **p's** for **people's**
- **i's** for **that's**
- **x's** for **it's**
- **y've** for **you've**
- **s's** for **so's**
- **w's** for **will's**
- **y'd** for **you'd**

They are also used when 's is added to a proper name to form the possessive, as in "Will's hat" or "Tom More's house." They are not used when preceded by the apostrophe in an expression such as *d'you* or *t'have*.

**4.2b With hyphens.** When words are joined by hyphens to form hyphenated compound words, each word maintains its whole word integrity. Therefore, whole-word contractions may be used in hyphenated compound words, whether such words are brailled on one line or divided between lines.

However, these contractions represent whole words only and cannot be used in syllabicated words or to form parts of words even if a word such as *likely* is divided between braille lines leaving *like*- on a line by itself. Example:

So-fi-a! If you don't get that canopy up soon my hair-do will go limp.

---

**TOC -- INDEX**
4.2c With slashes. One-cell whole-word contractions, even those followed by an apostrophe, are not used when they are in direct contact with a slash. A slash is spaced as in print — so if in print there is a space between a word that could be contracted and a slash, the contraction is used. Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Us/we will go soon.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Us / we will go soon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can't/can</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2d Capitalized. Although these contractions consist of single letters, they stand for whole words. Therefore, when such words appear in print in full capitals, in braille the double capital sign precedes the contraction. However, the words A, I, and O require only the single capital sign, for although they are words, they consist of only one letter. Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>O, SAY CAN YOU SEE?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Remember: the double capital indicator is not repeated after a hyphen in a fully capitalized expression. Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAN-DO!</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Drill 13

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. If I apply sun block it's very likely I won't get a sunburn.
2. "JUST-DO-IT!" yells Sam.
3. Will's people will visit us next week, but Jack can't make it.
4. Todd is quite a can-do guy; not like my uncle at all.
5. Willie will/won't play ball.
6. A milk-can blocks every exit at James More's Dairy.
8. Philip snubs us, but I will not do likewise, as I feel no ill will.
9. If you make a will, I rather hope you'll give John that cottage on Lake Willet.
10. A primitive people's tools may seem very crude but practical.
11. That road is so bad; it'll take a week or more if you go that way.
12. Self-knowledge is wisdom.
13. I want t'have a bike like Brian has.
4.3 Whole-Word Contractions for and, for, of, the, with [XI.36.a, 37]

The next group of contractions to be studied is as follows:

- **and** (dots 12346)  **the** (dots 2346)
- **for** (dots 123456)  **with** (dots 23456)
- **of** (dots 12356)

Unlike the one-cell whole-word contractions just studied, the contractions for *and, for, of, the, and with* are used to represent either whole words or parts of words. When used as whole words and when two or more of them appear in sequence, these contractions, as well as the word *a*, are brailled with no space between them. Examples:

The mayor will labor for and with the people of the village.

Music for a Flute and a Piano

In the case where two of these contractions should be joined but there is only room at the end of the line for one of them, if need be, that one may be brailled at the end of the line and the other carried over to the new line.

Remember: The whole word contractions for *and, for, of, the, and with* can only be joined to each other—not to the one-cell, whole-word contractions learned earlier. Example:

And for you, I have a gift.

4.3a With punctuation and composition signs. These contractions are not brailled together if any punctuation or composition signs occur between them. Therefore, when two or more of these words are initially or fully capitalized and follow one another in titles, headings, or other such material, they are not joined—and the appropriate capital sign is placed before each of the words. Examples:

MUSIC FOR A FLUTE AND A HORN

Tom and The Dog

Dave looks and (with a smile) waves.
4.3b **In hyphenated compound words.** Like the one-cell whole-word contractions, the contractions for *and, for, of, the,* and *with* are used in hyphenated compound words. Example:

man-of-the-trade \[\text{man}-\text{of-the-trade}\]

4.3c **With slashes.** Unlike the one-cell whole-word contractions, these contractions can be used when in contact with a slash. Example:

and/but \[\text{and}/\text{but}\]

**Drill 14**

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. We will go for a hike with the girls.
2. The glee club sang "For The Glory Of The Flag."
4. The play at the Orpheum is just a run-of-the-mill melodrama.
5. I'll have a salad and/or just a cup of tea.

4.4 **Part-Word Contractions for *and, for, of, the, with* [XII.38, 38.b]**

In general, these contractions are used as parts of words wherever the letters they represent occur. Thus, the sign for *and* is used in *hand, sandy,* and *Andrew;* the sign for *for* is used in *forge* and *forum;* the sign for *of* is used in *off, office,* and *roof;* the sign for *the* is used in *then, Thelma,* and *theory;* and the sign for *with* is used in *withhold* and *withe.* Note that the use of these signs does not depend on pronunciation; whether the vowel is short or long, whether the consonant is hard or soft, or—in the case of the sign for *of*—whether the *o* is part of a double vowel, as in *roof.* Example:

Ethel and Sandy fell off the platform and onto the bandbox.

Ethel and Sandy fell off the platform and onto the bandbox.

\[\text{Ethel and Sandy fell off the platform and onto the bandbox.}\]

Remember: When these contractions are used as parts of words, those words cannot be joined to other whole word contractions. Example:

land of the people \[\text{land of the people}\] [not] \[\text{land of the people}\]
4.5 Rules for All Part-Word Contractions [X.34]

In future lessons you will learn many contractions like and, for, of, the, and with that can be used as parts of words. The following rules apply to all part-word contractions.

4.5a When letters of a contraction all fall into the same syllable. A part-word contraction is always used when all of the letters of the contraction fall into the same syllable, as in profligate, profit, and formula.

4.5b Syllable divisions. There are special rules regarding the use of contractions that bridge over syllable divisions. For purposes of clarity, the terms major and minor are used in this manual to explain the different types of syllable division. These divisions may also be referred to as primary and incidental syllable divisions.

4.5b(1) Major syllable divisions. Do not use a part-word contraction when the letters of the contraction would overlap a major syllable division. Major syllable divisions occur in just three places:

   (1) Between a prefix and a base or root word. Thus, the of contraction is not used in professor, profane or profile. Note that the letters pro are not always prefixes—as in profit and product, for example.

   (2) Between a suffix and a base or root word. There are no examples using the contractions you have learned so far to demonstrate this rule, but you will become acquainted with some in Lesson 6.

   (3) Between the components of a solid compound word. Therefore, the of contraction cannot be used in photoflood or twofold.

All other syllable divisions are considered minor syllable divisions.

4.5b(2) Minor syllable divisions. Part-word contractions are used when they overlap minor, or incidental, syllable divisions, regardless of pronunciation, as in sofa (so-fa), Sofia (so-fia), and scandal (sc-and-al). A few exceptions to this rule will be discussed later.

4.5c Contraction preference. When a choice must be made between two possible contractions, preference is given to the contraction that saves the greater amount of space. It is for this reason that the sign for with is used in withe rather than the sign for the.

4.5d Word division. When dividing words at the end of a line, caution must be taken to ensure that the word is properly divided between syllables, even if this means sacrificing a contraction. Therefore, Andrew is divided An-drew, not (And)-rew, and forum is divided fo-rum, not (for)-um. (In these examples braille contractions are shown enclosed in parentheses.)
A good dictionary includes the etymology of each word, thus indicating prefixes and suffixes, which can be helpful when trying to decide whether a contraction should or should not be used in braille. The Typical and Problem Words list in Appendix C at the back of this book is also a helpful tool. It lists over 2,500 words showing proper syllable division and contraction usage. An even more comprehensive source is the Braille Enthusiast's Dictionary (compiled and edited by Alan J. Koenig and M. Cay Holbrook, ISBN 0-9634229-7-9, SCALARS Publishing, P.O. Box 382834, Germantown, TN, 38183-2824, 1-901-737-0001. www.scalarspublishing.com).

Drill 15

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. The man that lives next door took Theodore and me for a ride on the trolley.
2. He spoke the phrase with emphasis: "The land of the free and the home of the brave!"
3. You will profit from the lecture on mathematical theory, and for once, you will see the value of it.
4. Foreign travel has a twofold purpose: It helps you relax, and it gives you an idea of the way other peoples live.
5. You can tie the bundle with the withe that's withheld from the other job.
6. My wreck of a sofa looks as if it came from Holland with the Pilgrims.
7. I will live with and provide for the forlorn old man.
8. Samuel will give the girl he is fond of a brand-new Ford.
9. We'll take off for Cleveland on a plane and, for the sake of economy, we'll return on a bus.
10. Sandra forgot the sandals, the bandanna, the box of candy and the thermos bottle that I left on the sofa.
11. The professor will hold a forum on foreign policy.
12. Twanda gave me back my copy of Bunyan’s “Pilgrim’s Progress,” with profuse apologies.
13. Patrice will play next the Andante from Haydn’s “Surprise Symphony.”
Reading Practice

Write the following sentences in longhand. Compare your work with the print version in Appendix A.

4. If you lock your suitcase, you won't drop it.
5. If I sell my house, I'll move to a bigger place.
6. If she gives me a kiss, I'll give her flowers.
7. If it's a pretty morning, I'll go for a walk.
8. If it's a common fruit, I'll eat it.
9. If you see a man in a black suit, you won't drop it.
10. If he gives me a gift, it's very pretty. I'll wear it.
11. If I see a candle, I'll light it.
12. If it's likely to rain, I'll take an umbrella.
13. If it's likely to rain, I'll take an umbrella.
14. If I visit London soon, I'll visit the Tower.
15. If I visit London soon, I'll visit the Tower.
16. If I'm republic, I want an equal voice.
EXERCISE

Prepare the following sentences for submission to the instructor.

LESSON 4

1. I will not help you with the essay, for that is not quite fair.
2. Will has an adequate theoretical knowledge of the subject but can't apply that knowledge very well.
3. I can go with you, but I'd rather not.
4. We fill every vacancy as soon as we can.
5. Sandy's plane took off from Dulles Airport at noon.
6. Do is a note on the diatonic scale.
7. Just a bit of humor helps people forget small worries.
8. Let us write at once and ask for tickets for AS YOU LIKE IT.
9. I'd like t'have that.
10. William and Theresa will gather forget-me-nots from the woods.
11. Mike Sanford tries, but it's not likely that he will make the grade.
12. Do you want two cans of plums as well as the can of apricots?
13. The have-nots of Turnville will profit from the mayor's new rule.
14. Oh, Randy, will you give Esther that pecan? You ate all the almonds.
15. Let us locate Sofia on the map of Europe.
16. The husky sophomore halfback made the goal that won the game.
17. Cy's language is very crude and likewise profane; and for a fact I hope he will reform.
18. I'd go with you, but my d--n rheumatism keeps me home.
19. Will you ask for and pay my bill at the hotel?
20. The woman I spoke with a week ago came back for more details.
21. Swift's THE BATTLE OF THE BOOKS is a satire.
22. Pick the appropriate response: My pants do/don't fit anymore.
23. As the happy-go-lucky man races onto the railroad platform, he exclaims: “I've got no more'n two seconds for adieus!”
24. “That _____ so-and-so took off with my new truck!”
25. The Athenians won a moral victory at Thermopylae.
26. San Francisco, California, has a very unusual climate.
27. The girls will travel with and baby-sit my small son on the trip.
28. The Netherlands is a land of man-made dikes and canals.
29. The nosy visitor drawls: “I just met up with Aunt Ethel, and Auntie gave me all the village scandal and ‘dirt’.”
30. Fortune is an elusive will-o'-the-wisp.
31. Hit with a rock, the pickpocket writhed with agony.
32. A force of 1,000 Yankees securely held the fort despite the very valiant assaults of the Rebels.
33. He is not quite as tall as I am, but he is more agile.
34. Mandy spoke with emphasis: “I demand that you probate Uncle Elmore's and Aunt Alexandra's wills at once.”
35. I have a jigsaw puzzle for the kids, and for the adults I have a box of homemade candy.
36. For the next lesson you will practice the Andante of the Sonata.
37. The objective of the naval campaign is twofold, the blockade of all ports of the foe and the removal of the foe's fleet as an active force.
38. The plane rose 15,000 feet—a safe altitude for that region.
39. The blue- and gray-clad forces met at the crossroads.
Lesson 5

*Whole-Word Contractions for* child, shall, this, which, out, still

*Part-Word Contractions for* ch, sh, th, wh, ou, st

*Ordinal Numbers*

5.1 In General

Like the contractions *and, for, of, the,* and *with,* the contractions to be studied in this lesson represent certain letter combinations that can represent a whole word or part of a word. When standing alone they represent a whole word beginning with those letter combinations. However, when they are connected to other letters they take on their letter meaning and become part of a word. These contractions and their meanings are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contraction</th>
<th>Whole-Word Meaning</th>
<th>Part-Word Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>child</td>
<td>ch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>shall</td>
<td>sh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td>this</td>
<td>th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\</td>
<td>which</td>
<td>wh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/</td>
<td>out</td>
<td>ou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>:</td>
<td>still</td>
<td>st</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2 Whole-Word Contractions for *child, shall, this, which, out, still* [XI]

When these contractions stand alone they represent whole words. Example:

This child, which is still out, shall eat late.

5.2a With an apostrophe. The only instances in which these whole-word contractions may be used with the apostrophe are in the words *child's* and *still's.* Thus, the whole-word contraction for *this* is not used in *this'll* and the whole-word contraction for *which* is not used in *which'll.*

5.2b In hyphenated compound words. These whole-word contractions are joined to other words by the hyphen to form hyphenated compound words, whether such words are written on one line or divided between lines. Examples:

still-life

5.2c As proper names. Like other whole-word contractions, these signs are used to represent proper names, such as *(Still), Morris (and) Associates.*
Drill 16

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. Does the child want this book?
2. Shall I pick out a new hat for you?
3. Which is correct, "I shall" or "I will."
4. This brew came from Uncle Randy’s new still.
5. The breeze blew my notes every-which-way.
6. That child’s hair-do is rather out-of-date.
7. “Which way out?”
8. My old roommate from Still Pond still pays me a visit every fall.
9. I keep busy with this-and-that.

5.3 Part-Word Contractions for *ch, sh, th, wh, ou, and st* [X.34, XII.38]

In general, these signs are used as part-word contractions whenever the letters they represent occur within a word, even if they overlap a minor syllable division (see Lesson 4, 4.5b(2)). Thus, the sign for *ch* is used in Chicago and scratch; the sign for *sh* in shoe and hush; the sign for *th* in thorn and filth; the sign for *wh* in what and whale; the sign for *ou* in proud, four, and coupon; the sign for *st* in state, past, and pistol; the signs for *th* and *st* in thistle; the signs for *ou* and *ch* in touch; and the signs for *wh* and *st* in whitest.

Whenever these contractions are joined to other letters they take on their part-word meaning and lose their whole-word status. This rule applies even if a word is divided between lines and the letters of a contraction stand on a line alone. Examples:

```
grandchild  GR-K-AILD  grand- GR-RU child  AILD
outside  OT-SIDE  out- OT-U side  UIDE
```

5.3a Prefixes. As stated in the previous lesson, a contraction should not be used where part of the letters fall into a prefix and the rest fall into a base or root word. Thus, the sign for *sh* cannot be used in mishap or mishandle; the sign for *ou* cannot be used in pronion; and the sign for *st* cannot be used in mistake or mistrust.

5.3b Solid (unhyphenated) compound words. Nor are part-word contractions used where they fall partly into one component of a solid compound word and partly into another. Thus, the sign for *sh* is not used in dachshund; the sign for *th* is not used in porthole; the sign for *wh* is not used in rawhide; and the sign for *st* is not used in crosstrees.
5.3c **Contraction preference.** As you learned in the last lesson, when you have a choice between two contractions, the one that uses the least space is usually preferred. Therefore, use the *the* contraction, not the *th* contraction, in *theory, mathematics, theology,* and the like.

5.3d **Sh.** When *sh* is used to mean an admonition to silence, the contraction for *sh* cannot be used because it bears its whole-word meaning *shall* when standing alone. The contraction is used if additional letters are added, as in *shh.* Example:

Tex recites, “Sh! Shhh! Out of the canyon ride the bandits!”

5.3e **St.** When in print the words *Street* or *Saint* are abbreviated *St.,* they should also be abbreviated in braille—and the contraction for *st* is used. When they are abbreviated *St* (without the period), the letters, not the contraction, are used because the contraction standing alone would be read as the word *still.* If these words are spelled out fully in print, follow copy. Example:

At South St turn left; St. Ann's Church is on West Street.

5.4 **With Slashes** [VII.28.e(6)(b)]

Do not use the whole-word contractions for "child," "shall," "this," "which," "out" and "still" when they are in direct contact with a slash. The part-word contractions for "ch," "sh," "th," "wh," "ou" and "st," however, can be used next to the slash. Example:

Which/what tie shall I put on?

5.5 **Ordinal Numbers** [VII.29] [diff.]

The contractions for *st* and *th* should be used when writing ordinal numbers such as *1st* and *4th* (or *1st* and *4th*). It should be noted that in print the second and third ordinal numbers are normally formed by adding the endings *nd* and *rd* to the cardinal numbers 2 and 3, respectively. Occasionally, however, they are represented by adding only the letter *d* to the cardinal number. In such cases, the letter *n* or *r* should be inserted in braille. Thus, *2d* and *3d* should always be transcribed *2nd* and *3rd.* Example:

Does Stan live on 1st, 2d, 3d or 4th Street?

---

**TOC -- INDEX**

5 - 3
Drill 17

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. Shhh! That shrill whistle annoys me.
2. The churlish dog chases the mischievous child off the grass.
3. Uncle Jonathan still has the shoe store on 21st St.
4. He came out from St. Louis, Missouri, only two months ago.
5. The ship, which will dock at Southampton on the 22d or 23d of April, will return on the 31st.
6. What d'you expect for Christmas from Uncle Nathaniel?
7. Whether you like it or not—I won't make another mistake like this.
8. Did Mr. Whitney mishandle the school funds?
9. I shall choose another restaurant, for my family simply will not eat any hothouse tomatoes.
10. We shall/shall not go with you.
11. Our van can hold Mom's wheelchair.
12. Meg just loves the out-of-doors; she is a happy child and, I admit, my favorite grandchild.
13. Hey, Guys! Which'll eat this banana?

Reading Practice

Write the following sentences in longhand. Compare your work with the print version in Appendix A.

14. Why don't y wait & dig a pothole next week;
15. She cut d get my say-so;
16. See t or I sold my limp;
17. Look! My new Disney &
on & back &
18. Your & vote or n; wait & see Victory! I w make u & happy;
19. Is woman & microscope is well's physician;
20. It is a cottage & date on & rose

mat: w

5 - 4
EXERCISE

Prepare the following exercise for submission to the instructor.

LESSON 5

1. The child's worn-out doll is still a favorite toy.
2. Mr. McDougall lives at 4325 43rd St., Chevy Chase.
3. Christy's closet is full of sheets, washcloths, dishcloths, and other household items.
4. The story of Jonah and the whale thrills my small grandchild.
5. We shall move from St. Paul Street as soon as we can locate a satisfactory house.
6. On the 21st of this month school'll close for a couple of weeks, which'll cause nobody grief.
7. Still College is a famous school of osteopathy, and Still's curriculum is very broad.
9. The lively man sang tunes, told outlandish stories, and did a jig.
10. Without Kathy's help we'd have lost the game.
11. You may go outside and play while I bathe and dress.
12. The smallest mishap will cause the failure of our plan.
13. We stand at the threshold of further, more significant, space travel.
14. I hope the jockey doesn't strike the horse with that rawhide whip.
15. D'you suppose I can buy fresh fruit at the store on 22nd Street?

(continued)
17. The Whitmans expect the new baby on the 29th of July.
18. This Christmas Grandpa will recite A VISIT FROM ST. NICHOLAS for Sheila.
19. Why did the Czechoslovakians mistrust the Austrians?
20. We ate a tasty lunch at a Childs Restaurant and then saw a top-notch play.
21. The boys will take the new shallop out for a two- or three-hour sail on the Wabash.
22. Both of the candidates expect an out-and-out victory.
23. This is a list of my husband's favorite authors: Hawthorne, Poe, Walt Whitman, Shelley, Johann Goethe, Balzac, Proust, Mann, John Galsworthy, Chekhov and Dostoevski.
24. Every August we escape the metropolis for a few weeks of outdoor life on the Thousand Islands.
25. Which story will you publish?
26. “If you devour all that fresh fruit you'll get a stomach ache,” she told the gluttonous child.
27. It's a shame that we can't provide that destitute child a home.
28. A loud cry of anguish came from the boy: "Ouch! My tooth aches!"
29. The prounion forces will urge a strike for more safety devices.
30. I still recall the fury of the big storm of '85, which came up out of the southeast.
31. "Sh," admonishes the nurse, "the child's at last asleep."
32. My husband took our dachshund out for a walk.
33. A thistle has thorns.
34. You look quite ill; shall I call a cab?
35. The candy store has chocolates, which is exactly what I want.
36. I wish you'd stand still so I can fix this hem.
37. You're a knock-out, Beth, with that hair-do.
38. Mom says this is a list of thou-shall-not rules.
39. Put out/douse the fire.
40. This'll go well with my new shirt.
41. That child is still-as-a-mouse.
42. Can you scratch my back? It itches.
Lesson 6

Part-Word Contractions for ar, ed, er, gh, ow, ble, ing

6.1 In General  [XII.38]

The following contractions are part-word contractions only; they have no whole-word meanings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contraction</th>
<th>Part-Word Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ar</td>
<td>ed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er</td>
<td>gh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ow</td>
<td>ble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Except where specific rules limit their use, these contractions are used as parts of words wherever the letters they represent occur. Thus:

- the sign for *ed* is used in:
  - Edith (*Ed*)i(th), need *ne(ed)*, edelweiss (*ed)elweiss*, sedan *s(ed)an*, red *r(ed)*
- the sign for *ar* is used in:
  - Arkansas (*Ar*)kansas, cheddar (*ch*)d(*ar*), garbage *g(ar)bage*, bare *b(ar)e*
- the sign for *er* is used in:
  - error (*er*)ror, whimper (*wh*)mp(*er*), fern *f(er)n*, Peru *P(er)u*, sherry *sh(er)ry*
- the sign for *gh* is used in:
  - ghoulish (*gh*)ouli(*sh*), laugh lau(*gh*), sight *si(gh)t*, thorough (*th*)or(*ou*)(*gh*)
- the sign for *ow* is used in:
  - own *ow*n, towel *t(ow)el*, show *sh(ow)*, toward *t(ow)(ar)d*, drowsy dr(ow)sy
- the sign for *ble* is used in:
  - marble *m(ar)(ble)*, Bible *Bi(ble)*, goblet *go(ble)t*, problem *pro(ble)m*
- the sign for *ing* is used in:
  - swinging *sw(ing)(ing)*, ginger *g(ing)(er)*, finger *f(ing)(er)*, fringe *fr(ing)e*

When, at the end of a braille line, a one-cell part-word contraction forms the last syllable of a word, there is no need to carry that syllable over to a new line because it could be inserted in the same space that is occupied by the hyphen. However, if such a final syllable is followed by punctuation, the contraction and punctuation must be carried to the next line. Examples:

```
chart-                        flatter-
ed.                     ing!
```
6.1a Prefixes. Like the contractions previously studied, these contractions are not used where part of the letters of the contraction fall into a prefix and the rest into a root or base word. Thus, the sign for *ed* is not used in *reduce*, *deduce*, *edict*, *predict*, or *predate*. Similarly, the sign for *er* is not used in *derogatory*, *prerogative*, *erect*, *erupt*, *rerun*, or *derail*. The sign for *ble* is not used in *sublet*, nor the sign for *ar* in *infrared*.

In a few words, the beginning letters *se* constitute a prefix meaning "apart." When that prefix is followed by the letter *d*, as in *seduce* and *sedition*, the *ed* contraction cannot be used because it would overlap between the prefix and the root word. An exception occurs in the case of the word *sedate*, where the sign for *ed* is not used even though *se* is not a prefix.

Another exception to this rule occurs in a few familiar words that begin with the letters *ar*. In the easily read words *around*, *arise*, and *arose* the *ar* contraction is used, even though in these cases the *a* is a prefix. [X.34.c]

- Note: Remember the very strong rule that says that when all of the letters of a contraction fall into the same syllable, the contraction is used. Although the *er* contraction cannot be used in *derive* because *de* is a prefix, it is used in *derivation* because both the *e* and the *r* fall into the same syllable.

6.1b Suffixes. These contractions are not used where part of the letters comprising them fall into a base or root word and the remainder into a suffix. Thus, the sign for *ed* is not used in *freedom* or *boredom*.

Use caution when transcribing words that end in *ry* and *ery*. When the suffix *ry* is added to words such as *image*, *rifle*, and *savage*, creating *imagery* (*im/age/ry*), *riflery* (*ri/fle/ry*), and *savagery* (*sav/age/ry*), the *er* contraction cannot be used. However, when *ry* is added to *slave* and *bake* to create *slavery* (*slav/er/y*) and *bakery* (*bak/er/y*), the *er* contraction is used because all the letters of the contraction fall within the same syllable—a rule that takes precedence over the suffix rule.

6.1c Solid Compound Words. As has been stated previously, contractions are not used where they fall partly into one component of a solid compound word and partly into another. Thus, the sign for *ed* is not used in *kettledrum*, the sign for *er* is not used in *statroom*, the sign for *th* is not used in *sweetheart*, and the sign for *gh* is not used in *foghorn*. Nor is the *st* contracted in proper names such as *Johnstown* or *Charlestown*. (Note, however, that when such names are shortened to *Johnston* or *Charleston*, the *st* contraction is used.)

6.1d Digraphs (Diphthongs) and Trigraphs. In order to preserve proper pronunciation, the letters of a digraph or a trigraph must not be separated. There are exceptions to this rule that will be discussed in later lessons.

- A DIGRAPH is any two adjoining letters that combine to make one sound, e.g., the *ph* in *graphic*.
- A DIPHTHONG is a digraph composed of two adjoining vowels that make one sound, e.g., the *oi* in *coil*.
- A TRIGRAPH is three letters combining to make one sound, e.g., the *eau* in *bureau*.
Because the *ae* in *aerial* and the *oe* in *Goering* are diphthongs and cannot be separated, the *er* contraction cannot be used; nor can the sign for *ed* be used in *Oedipus*, *encyclopedia*, or *aedile*. *Ble* cannot be contracted in *tableau* because to do so would separate the letters of the trigraph *eau*.

There is an exception to this rule. When common suffixes such as *er* and *ed* are added to base words ending in a vowel, which sometimes creates a digraph or trigraph, the *er* and *ed* contractions are used. Examples:

- cano(ed)
- to(ed)
- (sh)o(ed)
- (sh)o(er)
- emb(ar)go(ed)
- boo(ed)
- woo(er)
- do(er)
- (sh)ampoo(er)

Note that not all adjoining vowels are diphthongs. For example, in the words *coeducate* and *coerce* the *ed* and *er* contractions are used because the *oe* does not combine to form a diphthong (one sound)—and all of the letters of the contraction fall into the same syllable.

- Note: The diphthongs *ae* and *oe* are sometimes printed together (æ, œ). In braille they are transcribed as separate letters. Use a transcriber's note (to be studied in Lesson 12) to explain this change.

### 6.1e Avoiding Difficulty in Pronunciation.

Another general restriction on the use of contractions is that they are not used if their use would cause difficulty in pronunciation, especially in uncommon or rarely used words. For example, the sign for *ed* is not used in *Airedale*, *battedore*, *skedaddle*, or *predacious*, nor should the sign for *ing* be used in *lingerie* or *distingué*. The *er* contraction is not used in *diaeresis* (di/aer/e/sis) because although *aer* constitutes a trigraph and a syllable, the use of the *er* contraction would make this unfamiliar word difficult to pronounce.

### 6.1f Consonants Pronounced Separately.

Do not use a contraction when two adjoining consonants are pronounced separately. As a consequence, the *gh* contraction is not used in *shanghaied*, nor is the *wh* contraction used in *towhee*. There are several exceptions to this rule—especially in common, familiar words. For example, the contraction for *ing* is used in *ginger* and *harbinger* even though the *n* and *g* fall into different syllables.

- Note: Until the student becomes accustomed to traditional braille treatment of words that contain diphthongs or have adjoining consonants that are pronounced separately, it is best to consult the *Typical and Problem Word List* in the back of this book or the *Braille Enthusiast's Dictionary*. (See 4.5d)

### 6.1g Numbers followed by contractions.

Just as with ordinal numbers [5.5], when a suffix that constitutes a contraction is added to a number, the contraction is used. Example:

- I was 911*ed* to the hospital. ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐
- It's not worth $20, but I'll give you a 10*er*. ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

- This rule applies only to single-cell, part-word contractions. Other types of contractions should not be used in unconventional letter-number constructions.
Drill 18

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. Our corner drugstore is having a big sale on toothbrushes, cigars, bath powder, cigarette lighters, bubble bath, dishes, thimbles and needles.
2. The Hagerstown Almanac predicts snow for March 29.
3. If my salary is reduced, we can't redecorate the living room as planned.
4. He derived a huge profit from the sale of barley last year.
5. "Will you erase the blackboard, Lonnie, and redo the lesson?"
6. Victorian ladies loved battledore, a game played with a racket and a shuttlecock.
7. Carol arose early this morning and studied for the arithmetic test.
8. The colony Sir Walter Raleigh sponsored at Roanoke predated the Jamestown colony.
9. A thorough knowledge of the Spanish language is a prerequisite for the South American service.
10. "What a hat — it's absolutely smashing!"
11. The Russians slaughtered the Hungarian Freedom Fighters with tanks and artillery.
12. THE TEMPEST is full of striking imagery.
13. The blast of the foghorn warned of lurking danger.
14. The tuberose is a fragrant, white, lily-like flower.
15. Our new neighbors came from the town of Rosedale, Michigan.
16. He plans on making a career of aerodynamics.
17. Dick Hoerner starred for the Los Angeles Rams.
18. The Roman aedile supervised the games at the Colosseum.
19. Shanghai is a port on the Huangpu River.

6.2 Ing or ble at the Beginning of a Word [XII.38.a]

There is one restriction on the use of the signs for *ing* and *ble* that does not apply to the other contractions in this lesson, namely, that they are not used at the beginning of a word. Thus, the sign for *ing* is not used in *ingot*, nor the sign for *ble* in *blemish*. Even when such a word comes after the hyphen in a hyphenated compound word, as in *once-blemished*, the contraction cannot be used. However, unless other rules prevent it, these contractions are used at the beginning of a line in a divided word. Examples:

- em-(ble)m
- morn-(ing).
- Wa(sh)-(ing)ton
- Bi-(ble).
6.3 Retaining Usual Braille Form of Base Word [X.34.b(1)]

Still another general rule restricting the use of contractions is that a contraction is not used if it would result in an alteration of the usual braille form of a base word. Thus, because the usual braille form of the word *blemish* does not contain the contraction for *ble*, this contraction must not be used when a prefix is added to it, as in *unblemished*. Similarly, the word *ingenuous* does not use the sign for *ing*, nor does the word *disingenuous*; the word *blend* does not contain the sign for *ble*, nor should the word *pitchblende*. In such words, the contractions are not used whether the word is written on one braille line or whether it is divided between lines. Examples:

\[
\begin{array}{llll}
noseble(ed) & nose- & unblemi(sh)(ed) & un- \\
ble(ed) & & blemi(sh)(ed) & 
\end{array}
\]

6.4 Part-Word Signs Standing Alone [XII.38.d]

Even though the part-word signs studied in this lesson have no whole-word meanings, they are used to represent the proper name *Ed*, the abbreviation *Ed* (editor), the vocal sound of hesitation *er*, and the exclamation *ow*. Example:

Ed mumbled, “Er — I hope the shot won't hurt — Ow!”

\[
\begin{array}{llll}
\text{Ed} & \text{mumbled, “Er — I hope the shot won't hurt — Ow!”} \\
\end{array}
\]

6.5 Choice Between Alternative Contractions [X.35]

6.5a Preference for contractions saving greater space. Where a choice must be made between two alternative contractions or combinations of contractions, preference should be given to that contraction or combination of contractions that saves the greater amount of space. Examples:

\[
\begin{array}{lll}
\text{ba(the)s} & \text{[not]} & \text{ba(th)es} \\
\text{(with)(er)} & \text{[not]} & \text{wi(the)r} \\
\text{m(ar)(ble)d} & \text{[not]} & \text{m(ar)bl(ed)} \\
\text{tum(ble)r} & \text{[not]} & \text{tumbl(er)} \\
\end{array}
\]

6.5b Preference for the contractions *and*, *for*, *of*, *the*, and *with*. Where alternative contractions or combinations of them would occupy the same amount of space, preference is given to the part-word contractions for *and*, *for*, *of*, *the*, and *with*. Examples:

\[
\begin{array}{lll}
\text{bro(the)r} & \text{[not]} & \text{bro(th)(er)} \\
\text{nor(the)rn} & \text{[not]} & \text{nor(th)(er)n} \\
\text{soo(the)d} & \text{[not]} & \text{soo(th)(ed)} \\
\end{array}
\]
6.6 **Syllabication [I.5.a.]**

As with the plurals of nouns discussed in Lesson 2, the past tense and the past and present participles of regular verbs cannot be found in the dictionary. Therefore, the inexperienced transcriber may have some difficulty in deciding how to divide these words into syllables.

### 6.6a Verbs

In general, adding *ed* or *d* to the verb to form the past tense does not add a new syllable. Thus such words as *raced, shaved, brushed, caused, passed, and slipped* remain one syllable and may not be divided. However, when *ed* is added to a verb ending in *d, t, dd,* or *tt,* it is pronounced separately and constitutes a new syllable. Examples:

- braid-
ed,  
suspend-
ed,  
test-
ed,  
supplant-
ed,  
add-
ed,  
butt-
ed,

When a verb ends in a *t* or *d* that is doubled before the addition of *ed,* a new syllable is formed and the division is then made between the doubled consonants. Examples:

- nod-
ed,  
plot-
ed

### 6.6b Adjectives

The foregoing practices apply to verbs only. Take care to distinguish adjectives ending in *ed*—such as *crooked* and *wicked*—where the *ed* does constitute a separate syllable, even though it is not preceded by a *t* or *d.*

When *er* or *est* is added to adjectives to form the comparative or superlative, this always results in an additional syllable. Examples:

- bold-
er,  
steadi-
er,  
long-
er,  
muddi-
er,  
est  est

When the base word ends in *ee,* the double vowel is divided; one *e* stays with the base word, and the other goes with the *st* or *r* to make the final syllable. Examples:

- fre-
er,  
fre-
er,  
est

When a final consonant is doubled before adding the *er* or *est,* the added consonant belongs in the syllable with the *er* or *est.* Examples:

- big-
ger,  
big-
ger,  
mad-
der,  
mad-
der,  
dest

### 6.6c Participles

When *ing* is added to a verb to form the present participle, it always results in an additional syllable. Examples:

- obey-
ing,  
suffic-
ing,  
hid-
ing,  
form-
ing,
When the letters *ing* are added to a base word they become a syllable; however, when a final consonant is doubled before adding the *ing*, the added consonant belongs in the syllable with the *ing*. Examples:

```
grab-               run-
bing               ning
```

**Drill 19**

Practice braiilling the following sentences.

1. Ginger ale will quiet an upset stomach now and then.
3. Her hair is slightly tinged with gray, but her eyes have the sparkle of youth.
4. During the storm the gale blew all the flower pots off the front porch.
5. While visiting Switzerland, we learned that the edelweiss is a favorite flower of that area.
6. Aloysius is a brilliant scholar, but he will not study without coercion.
7. Ed's plane landed on the fringe of the runway.
8. I didn't like boxing practice last week; it left me with a nosebleed.
9. Doctor Sam Johnston has an unblemished record as a surgeon.
10. Frederick's nostrils savored the tantalizing aroma of coffee arising from the downstairs flat.
11. “Ow!” shouted the professor as he dropped the stack of books.
12. “Let's see,” pondered Jerry, “it's—er—four more weeks until school is out.”
13. She gave Steve a withering look and exclaimed, “I wish you'd bathe every now and then!”
14. She loathed the bitter northern climate; and that is why she soon moved south.
15. The cricket is the harbinger of the early approach of the fall of the year.
16. Erika gave a sigh of boredom as she waited for the others.
17. The seductive perfume of flowers filled the night air.
18. This marble-top coffee table looks very nice with a modern sofa.
19. The child coughed, and her sister sneezed.
20. Though the policeman is tough, he is fair.
Reading Practice

Write the following sentences in longhand. Compare your work with the print version in Appendix A.

1. I cut figure 2 cat he is sayu. He
2. I want freedom & daily drudgery
3. My job
4. You get a job at a local bank
5. Roll a butter cake
6. I do cold runs 5 big if it calls
7. Is log
8. You can name you tell he uniq is
9. Buy luncheon
10. Put a part on a talk
11. My art is a painting seller
12. We will send an aeroplane & give
13. We went to camp
14. We do on pole beside 2 grade
15. Get a really set
16. Think parents recommend great
17. Lovely pictures & tropical trees
18. We buy 2 tone style on 2 beach
19. While we the away to watch & 2
20. Stay
21. I am surprise 2 we be a planning trip
22. We in is there 2 we get he
23. We him we place 2 he ask social
24. Tag 2 do 2 urgenheit new diet diets
25. Lots of exercise
26. We follow 2 dynamite blank 2 mud
27. Vous don 2 hillside
EXERCISE

Prepare the following exercise for submission to the instructor.

LESSON 6

1. “The moving finger writes and having writ moves on.”—Omar Khayyam
2. The town sorely needed more civic progress and a change of politicians.
3. It is highly probable that the bill will pass overwhelmingly.
4. The remark Meg made is far from flattering, I can assure you.
5. George Washington, a redoubtable soldier, excelled as a statesman as well.
6. Jack says the towhee resembles the sparrow, but I don't agree.
7. The volcano erupted, causing serious loss of life and property.
8. She will sublet her house during her sojourn abroad.
9. Hitler, Goering and Himmler ruled the Third Reich with an iron hand.
10. The Atlantic Charter proclaimed the “Four Freedoms.”
11. The new doghouse will keep Rover warm during the cold months.
12. The cut on Tanya's forefinger bled profusely.
13. The kettledrums are slightly off pitch, but once we get them fixed nobody will call our orchestra mediocre.
14. Gramp's old radio has an outside aerial.
15. They practiced riflery for an hour.
16. As the waitress set the salad on the table, he looked at it curiously and queried, “Did I order this, or—er—did another person want it?”
17. The Romans respected the aediles, who kept law and order.
18. Michael's Airedale, Tweedledum, won third prize at the neighborhood dog show.
19. The tiger is a predacious animal.
20. Boys shanghaied on the streets of Liverpool served on sailing ships.
21. The two outstanding track stars will rerun the hundred-meter dash.
22. Harry feels Margaret sings like a mockingbird, but Paul has another idea.
23. The coercive acts of the military turned people away from them.
25. The United States Army will not tolerate malingerers.
26. Are you taking a stateroom for the overnight trip?
27. On arriving at Singapore, Edmond cabled the Chicago office for further orders.

(continued)
28. The Cherry Blossom Festival is emblematic of Japanese-American mutual respect.
29. Roger Babson predicted the stock market crash of 1929.
30. Our proceeds from the last bingo game exceeded anything we anticipated.
31. I've promised Mom that I will take care of Mr. Snow's widow.
32. An unblemished record is a valuable asset for any politician.
33. While visiting Cairo I arose at five for the purpose of hearing the prayer call from the mosque.
34. Any adverse criticism of America's foreign policy arouses Howard's anger.
35. “Ow!” cried Ed, as the doctor roughly removed the bandage.
36. OEDIPUS REX is a famous tragedy of Sophocles.
37. The plants are withered from lack of water.
38. The melody of The Lost Chord soothes and relaxes my tired nerves.
39. The COURIER-JOURNAL carried a scathing editorial on the abuse of the magistrate's prerogatives.
40. He spoke eruditely and with fervor on the art of the Edwardian Era.
41. Eddie, Sherry, and Edythe will go downhill skiing on the 17th of March.
42. Hannah Marie wore pearl earrings and a brooch set with amethysts for the dress rehearsal.
43. The dignified Duchess hired a sedan chair for her tour of Shanghai.
44. The governor ordered the seditious periodical suppressed.
45. The doctor ordered a sedative for the hysterical victim.
SUMMARY OF CONTRACTION USAGE

I. Whole-Word Contractions (alphabet contractions, and, for, of, the, with, child, shall, this, which, out, still)

A. One-cell whole-word contractions (alphabet contractions)

1. Used only to represent whole words, names, and the possessive form of proper names.
   I can see Will More's hat.
   EXCEPTION: d and s cannot be used for the musical notes do and so.

2. Never used for parts of words or names.
   It is unlikely that William Peoples will eat the donut.

3. When followed by an apostrophe these contractions can be used in 15 instances only.
   (see 4.2a).
   Go'n get Mom, she'll say it's OK.

4. Are used in hyphenated compound words.
   doll-like self-knowledge

5. Cannot be used in syllabicated words or as parts of words when divided between lines.
   un-like-ly sopho-more

6. Cannot be used next to a slash.
   no/not can't/can

7. Require the double capital sign when fully capitalized in print.
   AS YOU LIKE IT

B. And, for, of, the, with

1. These whole-word contractions and the word a follow one another unspaced except where punctuation or composition signs intervene.
   for and of the people

2. Are used in hyphenated compound words.
   will-o'-the-wisp

3. Require the double capital sign when fully capitalized in print.
   FOR AND OF THE PEOPLE

4. Can be used next to a slash.
   and/or
C. Child, shall, this, which, out, still

1. These whole-word contractions are used in hyphenated compound words, whether written on one line or divided between lines.
   - out-and-out
   - out-and-
   - out

2. May be followed by an apostrophe only in child's and still's.

3. Cannot be used as part of a solid compound word, even when divided between lines.
   - grandchild
   - grandchild
   - child

4. Cannot be used next to a slash. child/adult

II. Part-Word Contractions

A. Rule for all part-word contractions (and, for, of, the, with, ch, sh, th, wh, ou, st, ar, ed, er, gh, ow, ble, ing and all part-word contractions yet to be learned)

1. Always use a part-word contraction when all of the letters of the contraction fall into the same syllable.
   - profit

2. Do not use a part-word contraction when it would overlap a major syllable division. Major syllable divisions occur:
   a) Between a prefix and a base or root word.
   - professor
   b) Between a suffix and a base or root word.
   - freedom
   c) Between the components of a solid compound word.
   - foghorn

3. Use a part-word contraction when it overlaps other, minor, syllable divisions.
   - goblet

B. When sh is used as an admonition to silence, the contraction IS NOT used, however, the contraction IS used in shhh.

C. When St. (with the period) is used as the abbreviation for Street or Saint, the contraction is used.

D. The contractions for st and th are used in ordinal numbers.
   - 1st
   - 4th

E. The contractions ed, er, and ow are used for Ed (name), Ed. (editor), er (vocal sound) and ow (exclamation).

F. The contractions for ing and ble are not used to begin a word but may begin a line in a divided word.
   - bleeding
Lesson 7

Whole-Word Lower-Sign Contractions for in, enough, be, his, was, were
Part-Word Lower-Sign Contractions for in, en, be, con, dis, com

Introduction to Short-Form Words

7.1 Definition of Lower Signs

In addition to the one-cell contractions already studied, there is another group of contractions known as lower signs. Combinations of dots from the middle and/or lower portion of the cell form these lower contractions. In other words, none of them contains an upper dot, dot 1 or dot 4. It should be noted that all of the punctuation signs studied in Lesson 2 are formed in the lower part of the cell. There are lower-sign contractions for both whole words and parts of words. Following are the lower-sign contractions that will be studied in this lesson.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contraction</th>
<th>Whole-Word Meaning</th>
<th>Contraction</th>
<th>Part-Word Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>::</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>::</td>
<td>in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::</td>
<td>enough</td>
<td>::</td>
<td>en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>::</td>
<td>be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>::</td>
<td>con</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>::</td>
<td>dis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>::</td>
<td>com</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Note that the contractions for the words in, enough, and be are the same as the contractions for the letters in, en, and be.

7.2 Whole-Word Lower Signs for in, enough, be, his, was, were [XIII.39]

These contractions, when standing alone, represent whole words. Example:

Was the food in his backpack enough for the hike? It may be that more sandwiches were needed.

7.2a In contact with punctuation or composition signs. Some of these contractions have the same configuration as certain marks of punctuation. To avoid confusion with punctuation, these contractions are only used when they stand alone as whole words. They cannot be in contact with any other letter, contraction, word, or punctuation sign — whereas punctuation marks are normally in direct contact with a word or other punctuation. Whole-word lower-sign contractions may, however, be preceded by composition signs, such as the
capital indicator and/or emphasis indicator (to be studied in Lesson 15). Thus, in the following sentence none of the whole-word lower-sign contractions can be used.

“His history book was—or rather is—in the same place my books were.”

Note that the word *his* could have been contracted if it had been preceded only by the capital indicator, but since it is also preceded by the opening quotation mark it was spelled out. The contraction for *his* is not used in the word *history* because the lower whole-word contractions cannot be used as parts of words. The contractions for *was* and *in* may not be used because the one precedes and the other follows a dash. The contraction for *were* may not be used because it would be in contact with the period.

Because these contractions must always stand alone, they cannot be used when next to a slash. Example:

```
in/out
```

### 7.2b In hyphenated compound words.
Unlike the whole-word contractions previously studied that use the upper part of the braille cell, these lower-sign contractions cannot be used to form hyphenated compound words because this would bring them into contact with a hyphen, contrary to the rule. Thus, the contraction for *in* cannot be used in *brother-in-law* nor the contraction for *be* in *bride-to-be*. However, where such hyphenated compound words are divided between two braille lines, the whole-word lower sign can be used if it starts the new line and is not followed by punctuation. Examples:

```
stand-in

stand- in

stand- in.
```

### 7.2c En as contraction for enough.
The whole-word contraction *en* cannot be used for anything other than the word *enough*. When the letters *en* form part of an anglicized expression or a name such as *en route*, *en masse*, *Chou En-Lai* or *Aix-en-Provence*, or when they are part of a hyphenated expression such as an "*en-shaped figure,*" the contraction is not used, and the letters are spelled out.

When the word *enough* cannot be contracted because it is in contact with punctuation, the *en* contraction (to be studied next) is used. (Enough!)

Drill 20

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. Was the man who carried the child in his arms a fireman?
2. “I will be—er—in my study if you need me.”
3. Do we have enough gas for the trip?
5. The savagery of the fight was revolting (in fact, three people passed out).
6. Chou En-lai, 1898-1976, was skilled in negotiating (his speeches were exuberant and well expressed).
7. That's what it was! A gray wolf hiding in the hedge.
8. Who did that—were you that person?
9. In spite of the fact that Michael was a stand-in for David, the play was a triumph.
10. Choose the correct answer: We was/were going in the morning.

7.3 Part-Word Lower Signs [XIII.39]

7.3a *In* and *En*. The same braille configurations that represent the whole words *in* and *enough* are also used to represent the letters *in* and *en* as parts of words. Use these two part-word lower-sign contractions as parts of words wherever the letters they represent occur, except when specific rules, such as the prefix and suffix rules, limit their use. Consequently, the *in* sign is used in *instant, main, pine, minor,* and *Carolina*. The *en* sign is used in *enforce, often, senior,* and *Gene*. Note that their use does not depend on whether the vowel is long or short.

It should also be borne in mind that where the *ing* contraction cannot be used because the letters occur at the beginning of the word, as in *ingredient*, or where the *ing* contraction would cause difficulty in pronunciation, as in the word *lingerie*, the *in* contraction is used.

(ːəɡrɪˈdɛntɪŋ) Also, in the word *dinghy*, where the *n* and *g* are pronounced as two sounds and the *g* and *h* are pronounced as one sound, the *in* and *gh* contractions are used in preference to the *ing* contraction. (ːdɪŋˈhiː)

7.3b Prefixes. The *in* sign is not used in *binomial* or *trinodal*, and the *en* sign is not used in *denominator* or *prenatal* because one of the letters of the contraction falls into a prefix and the other into another syllable that constitutes part of a root or base word.

The contraction for *en* is used in *coenzyme* and *gastroenteritis* where a prefix that ends in an *o* is added to a base word starting with an *e* because all of the letters of the contraction fall into the same syllable.

7.3c Compound words. Contractions cannot be used if they overlap the elements of a solid compound word; consequently the *en* sign is not used in *toenail* or *treenail*.

7.3d Diphthongs. In words like *Phoenix* and *subpoenaed*, the *en* sign is not used because the *e* is part of the diphthong *oe* and may not be separated from the *o* to form part of a contraction. On the other hand, the contraction for *in* is used in easily read words like *join, point* and *coin* even though *oi* is a diphthong.
7.3 Preference for and, for, of, the, and with contractions. In words like then and Athens the the contraction and n are used in preference to the th and en contractions because of the rule stated in 6.5b, which gives preference to the contractions for and, for, of, the, and with over any other contractions provided their use does not waste space.

7.4 The Lower-Sign Rule [XIII.40]
The six whole-word lower signs learned earlier in this lesson must always stand alone. However, any number of unspaced part-word lower signs can follow one another as long as the series is in contact with a character containing an upper dot (dot 1 or dot 4). Thus, in the following example both the in and en contractions are used in the word linen because the lower signs are in contact with the letter l. Example:

Was it truly his, that suit of fine linen?

As always, care must be taken when dividing words. Often when words containing lower signs are divided, the lower sign contraction cannot be used because it is no longer in contact with an upper dot. Examples:

They enjoy tennis. "It's made of linen."

• Note: This rule also applies to other part-word and whole-word lower signs that will be studied later in this lesson and in Lesson 8.

When two or more lower-sign contractions would follow one another without being in contact with an upper dot, the final lower-sign contraction is not used. Example:

We'll need milk, sugar, flour and shortening for the cake.

Since dots 3-5 represent both the whole word in and the letters in as part of a word, it is extremely important to correctly determine how the letters are used. For example, in the word shut-in the whole word in has been joined to the whole word shut to form a hyphenated compound word. As a whole word brailled on one line, the in contraction cannot be used since it is in contact with the hyphen. However, in the word shut-ins the letters in are simply a part of the word ins, and the contraction is used. Examples:
When used as *part of a word*, the contractions for *en* or *in* may be in contact with other letters or punctuation as long as the sequence is in touch with an upper dot. Examples:

```
It's all in vain—en-  
courage her anyway.  
I was self-in-  
dulgent.                
```

---

**Drill 21**

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. When they were finished with the interview the clock was striking seven.
2. If you don't hurry we'll be late for dinner.
3. I worry that they don't have enough food in the house for the entire weekend.
4. In the initial stages of the war all went well.
5. “In my not-so-very-humble opinion,” the indignant man from Virginia proclaimed, “General Lee was indubitably the most outstanding general in the Civil War.”
6. When my in-laws invaded our domain I was in a state of frenzy.
8. If you insist that I be frank, I will be.
9. How few they were, yet how magnificently they defended the homeland!
10. “Enough's enough!” cried the infuriated parent.
11. Dennis is having trouble with denominators that are binomials.
12. His ingrown toenail is giving Henri intolerable pain.
13. You can't deny that the theater is badly in need of a thorough renovating.
14. His enormous hand grasped mine in hearty welcome.
15. Demosthenes was a famous orator of ancient Athens.
16. The insects descended en masse and denuded the fields.
17. If you haven't anything in our price range we aren't interested in looking.
18. I remember Aunt Inez and how she told me in her southern drawl, "Joy, for my biscuits you'll need the best flour and fine shortenin'.”
19. Americans just weren't adequately prepared for the attack on Pearl Harbor and the events that followed.
20. The senator wasn't in, but his secretary greeted us warmly.
21. He finds the climate in Phoenix, Arizona, beneficial for his asthma.
If it is desirable to divide this lesson into two sections, the first 16 sentences in Exercise 7 may be assigned at this time as they relate only to the material studied in the unit to this point.

7.5  **Part-Word Lower-Sign Contractions for be, con, dis  [XIII.43]**

7.5a  **As first syllable of word.** The contractions for *be, con, and dis* are sometimes called the "leader" contractions because they are used only when they constitute a syllable and occur at the beginning of a word or at the beginning of a line in a divided word. Thus, these contractions are used in such words as *believe, conduct,* and *district.* They are not used in words such as *unbelievable, misconduct,* or *predisposed* where they do not occur at the beginning of the word. Nor are they used in such words as *bee,* *belligerent,* *conch,* and *disc* where the letters are included in the syllable; or in *coniferous* and *disheveled* where all the letters do not fall in the same syllable.

Although, as mentioned above, these contractions cannot be used in the middle of a word that is located all on one line, they are used when the letters of the contraction fall at the beginning of a line in a divided word. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>inconsiderate</th>
<th>in-</th>
<th>disobedient</th>
<th>dis-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;inconsiderate&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;in-&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;disobedient&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;dis-&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.5b  **As last syllable of word.** Although these contractions are used when they occur at the beginning of a line in a divided word, they cannot be used if they constitute the last syllable of such a divided word. Thus, when words like *maybe* and *beacon* are divided between lines, the contractions for *be* and *con* cannot be used for this would leave a part-word lower sign not in contact with a dot 1 or 4. Examples:

Charybdis | Charyb- | bacon | ba- |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Charybdis&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Charyb-&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;bacon&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;ba-&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.5c  **With punctuation.** The contractions for *be, con,* and *dis* are used when punctuation comes before them. Therefore, these contractions can be used when they constitute the first syllable in the second word of a hyphenated compound word. Examples:

"Control that dog!" | self-contained
| "Control that dog!" | "self-" |
(becoming, don't you think?) | non-disposable
| (becoming, don't you think?) | "non-" |

7 - 6
Do not use the contractions for *be*, *con*, and *dis* when punctuation comes immediately after them. As a consequence, they are not used in syllabicated words. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[be]hold</th>
<th>dis'armony</th>
<th>Con-rad!</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[be]hold</td>
<td>dis'amony</td>
<td>Con-rad</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When these contractions follow a slash they are no longer considered being at the "beginning" of a word, and therefore are not used. Example:

object/concur  object/\textsc{concur}\n
Although contrary to the Lower Sign Rule, when a word such as *self-control* is divided between braille lines following the first syllable of the second word, *self-con/trol*, the *con* contraction is not used because the contraction would then be followed by punctuation (the hyphen). Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>self-control</th>
<th>self-con-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SELF-\textsc{trol}</td>
<td>SELF-\textsc{con-trol}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>true-believer</th>
<th>true-be-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>true-believer</td>
<td>true-believer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.5d The words *con* and *dis*. Remember that the contractions for *con* and *dis* are purely part-word contractions and therefore cannot be used to represent the whole words *con* (as in the expression *pro and con*), or the slang expression *dis*. Examples: con, (con)n(ing), conn(ed), dis, (dis)s(ing), diss(ed)

7.6 Contraction for *com*  [XIII.44]

The contraction for *com* is similar in use to *be*, *con*, and *dis* in that it can only be used at the beginning of a word or at the beginning of a line in a divided word. However, unlike *be*, *con* and *dis*, it need not constitute an entire syllable in order to be used. Thus, this contraction is used in words like *come* and *coma* as well as in words like *command* and *compost*.

To avoid confusion with punctuation, this contraction is never used in contact with a hyphen, dash, or apostrophe—whether such punctuation comes before or after the letters. This rule applies even though a composition sign may intervene between such punctuation and the letters *com*. Example:

"Come in! Com'ere and meet the ex-committee chairwoman, Jane Reed-Comar."

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&quot;Come in! Com'ere and meet the ex-committee chairwoman, Jane Reed-Comar.&quot;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The contraction for *com* is not used next to a slash. Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go/come</th>
<th>go/\textsc{come}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Drill 22

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. I was disconcerted when I learned that residents of the District of Columbia were
denied home rule until the twentieth century.

2. The chairman of the sub-committee on the conduct of wayward youth lost his self-
control when the members became disorderly.

3. “Com'ere and help me fix this flat tire,” cried the exasperated motorist.

4. Sandy was bewitched, bothered and bewildered.

5. Congress debated the issue pro and con for weeks.

6. Maybe we'll send Mary with you, she is being very disobedient.

7. Czech immigrants settled in Wisconsin.

8. Mandy's belligerent attitude is completely incomprehensible.

9. Credit is given Sir Francis Bacon for having originated the modern scientific method
of thinking.

10. As the boy lay dying on the field of battle, he gasped, “May God com-fort and pro-tect
the Confederacy!”

7.7 Preserving the Usual Form of the Base Word [X.34.b(1)]

Be alert to base or root words that have more than one prefix. When words such as disturb,
distinguish, or distinct take on a second prefix, as in undisturbed, indistinguishable, and
indistinct, the dis is no longer the first syllable of the word and cannot be contracted. And,
to ensure easy recognition of the word, the st is not contracted either. Example:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{distinct} & \quad \text{indistinct} \\
\text{distinguish} & \quad \text{indistinguishable} \\
\text{distinct} & \quad \text{indistinct}
\end{align*}
\]

The same applies to ingenuous, where the ing contraction cannot be used because the
letters occur at the beginning of the word. When the prefix dis is added to create
disingenuous the ing contraction is still not used. This preserves the original form of the
base word and ensures proper pronunciation. Example:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ingenuous} & \quad \text{disingenuous} \\
\text{incongruous} &
\end{align*}
\]
7.8 **In Proper Names [XIII.43, 44]**

The contractions for *be, con, dis,* and *com* are used in names containing an apostrophe, such as *O'Connell*. They are also used in names starting with *Mc* or *Mac*—as long as they constitute the first capitalized syllable following *Mac* or *Mc* and are not the last syllable of the name. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>McConner</th>
<th>MacCommack</th>
<th>McBe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>⚬ scoffing</td>
<td>⚬ Mac COMMACK</td>
<td>⚬ scoff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McBeman</td>
<td>O'Connell</td>
<td>O'Con-nell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⚬ Cal-man</td>
<td>⚬ on-nell</td>
<td>⚬ on-nell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.9 **Be, con, dis, and com in Abbreviations [XIII.43.a]**

If any of these four contractions can be used in a complete word, it can also be used in the abbreviation for that word. Thus, since the *con* sign is used in the word *Connecticut*, it should also be used in the abbreviation *Conn.* Likewise, the *dis* sign should be used in *Dist.*, the abbreviation for *District*, and the *com* sign should be used in *Comdg.*, the abbreviation for *Commanding*. Of course, if the letters comprising any of these contractions constitute an entire abbreviation, as in *Con.* for *Consolidated*, the contraction cannot be used as it would result in two lower signs following one another without a space, and neither would be in contact with a character containing dot 1 or dot 4. Also, if these contractions could not have been used in the word itself, they should not be used in its abbreviation, as in *Belg.*, the abbreviation for *Belgium*.

7.10 **Introduction to Short-Form Words [XVI]**

In addition to contractions, braille contains abbreviated forms for many words that will be studied in succeeding lessons. They are called short-form words. Memorize the following six short-form words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short-form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Short-form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gd</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>pd</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lr</td>
<td>letter</td>
<td>qk</td>
<td>quick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ll</td>
<td>little</td>
<td>sd</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:
The letter said that good little boys and girls get paid quick.

TOC -- INDEX
Drill 23

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. The letter, I confess, left Dad looking rather bewildered.
2. I paid little heed when I was told that Connie and Beatrice were becoming constant companions.
3. Disposing of this problem will not be quick and will require the combined efforts of all of us.
4. The neighborhood park can hardly be compared with Coney Island.
5. Betty's behavior in school was unbecoming for a child her age—maybe she'll improve next year.
6. "The patient has come out of his coma and has improved considerably," said the good doctor.
7. Benedict's wife, who is the president of the Ladies Benevolent Society of St. John's Church, paid me a visit.
8. With considerable effort she regained her self-composure and continued perusing the letter.
9. Most of the men who man our submarines are trained at New London, Conn.
10. Ben O'Connor, a good little guy, is my choice for the job – come what may.
11. Constable Hemingway pointed his gun menacingly and ordered, “Quick! Come out from be'ind that bar!”
12. The politician's denial was disingenuous.
Reading Practice

Write the following sentences in longhand. Compare your work with the print version in Appendix A.
EXERCISE

Prepare the following exercise for submission to the instructor. Correspondence students: Submit the entire exercise at one time and ignore the line of asterisks between sentences #16 and #17.

LESSON 7

1. Dickens and Thackeray were the two most outstanding British novelists of the nineteenth century.
2. Grandpa will be in his late seventies when I graduate from college.
3. The doctor was insistent that he not get out of bed until well enough.
4. He recited Tennyson's “In Memoriam” with intense feeling.
5. “The enormous volcano is erupting,” enunciated the announcer.
6. Her prenatal exam shows that she has gastroenteritis.
7. We laughed as she told her tale—in a rather loud, animated, but humorous vein—involving her dog.
8. She says she feels insecure when she rides in a twin-engine plane.
9. When I've saved enough, I'll buy the entire set of Dickens for my grandchild.
10. Virgil's AENEID opens with the flight of the hero from Troy.
11. If he will take daily calisthenics for a few months his physique will be immensely strengthened.
12. A wooden peg used for joining timbers is called a treenail.
13. The renovated home was splendidly decorated in the style of the era.
14. I think Selena's injury was self-inflicted.
15. When Mr. Engles retired he started delivering groceries for shut-ins.
16. Jane loved the linen suit her Mom sent her from Italy.

***************

17. We felt very sad when the lovely coniferous tree fell down.
18. Benedict Arnold betrayed the United States when he surrendered West Point.
19. His boss said that my brother-in-law wasn't responsible for the failure of the company.
20. “Which'll it be, madame, soda or ginger ale?” inquired the bespectacled waiter.
21. Study the following antonyms: in/out, his/hers, content/dismayed, nervous/composed.
22. His behavior denoted that Adam was completely undismayed at the most unexpected outcome.
23. Our officers' meeting will be chiefly concerned with considering the new budget.
24. The lines of the pattern are very subtle and indistinct.
25. The denial of freedom of the press is a distinctly totalitarian phenomenon.
26. I find things like trinomials and logarithms a constant enigma.
27. I left the dinghy on the side of the Wisconsin River and continued my journey on foot.
28. People in the town are saying that the groom-to-be has become very unhappy and, in fact, quite disenchanted since learning of his betrothed's flirtatious ways.
29. “You be good an' come out quick with yer hands up,” said the sheriff, “or I'm comin' in and git yuh.”
30. As a Naval ex-commander, John was a firm believer in discipline.
31. Inter-continental flights arrive hourly at Dulles Airport.
32. The auto crash left his hair disheveled and his clothing in disarray.
33. Roger, a wanna-be rock star, becomes angry when Penny says he can't carry a tune.
34. As the swaggering cockney orator took his place on the rostrum, he began: "On be'alf of all decent Henglishmen I protest this insolent be'avior of the 'Ouse of Commons!"
35. On the corner, he passed a disreputable-looking stranger, who whined, “Will you 'commodate me with the price of a cup of coffee, sir?"
36. In a closely-contested race O'Connor was chosen Congressman from the 2nd Dist. of Iowa.
37. That was intended as a tribute, not a dis.
38. When she arrived at the studio, she discovered a hastily-scribbled note that said, “Called out of town unexpectedly; for next lesson practice Mozart's Con. No. 18.”
39. The new freight rates which the Interstate Commerce Committee has recommended are unbelievably high—but they will be paid.
40. If Leslie remains very patient, maybe Mr. Drew will change his mind and write her that letter.
41. Charybdis is a sinister whirlpool in Greek mythology.
Lesson 8

Whole-Word Lower-Sign Contractions for to, into, by
Part-Word Lower-Sign Contractions for bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, ea
More Short-Form Words

8.1 Contractions for to, into, by [XIII.41]

8.1a **In general.** There are three whole-word lower-sign contractions in addition to those studied in the preceding lesson. They are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contraction</th>
<th>Whole Word Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to</td>
<td>to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>into</td>
<td>into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by</td>
<td>by</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unlike the whole-word lower-signs learned in lesson 7 (in, enough, be, his, was, were), which must always be preceded and followed by a space, the contractions for to, into, and by are always joined to the word, contraction, composition sign, number, or symbol that follows. This rule prevents by from being read as was. These contractions are never used as parts of words. Examples:

Toby was to go by the bank at noon in order to put the deed into the safe.

The bylaws are written by and for the people.

8.1b **With composition signs.** Use these contractions both before and after composition signs such as capital, number, emphasis and letter indicators (to be studied later). Example:

2 GAMES TO GO, REDS WIN 6 TO 0!

Note that when to, into, or by and the following word are both fully capitalized, each word is preceded by the double capital indicator—even though they are joined.

8.1c **With punctuation.** Use the contractions for to, into, and by when they come after punctuation such as an opening quotation mark, opening parenthesis, a bracket, or a dash. But, they are not used when they come before punctuation marks. Examples:
"By the way, did you see Helen go by?"

(To Sam, it's a trip into "paradise.")

- Note that when the contraction for into cannot be used, the contraction for in is used.

Because the contractions for to, into, and by cannot be used when they come before punctuation, they cannot be used at the beginning or in the middle of a hyphenated compound word or expression. And, since these contractions must be connected to something following them, they cannot be used for the last word of such an expression.

Examples:

by-product

by-product

lay-by

lay-by

My How-To Book

My How-To Book

8.1d With other contractions. These contractions are joined to words that start with a part-word contraction. They are also joined to whole-word contractions. Example:

Tomato juice was poured by Sharon into every cup.

When to, into, or by comes before one of the six whole-word lower-signs (in, enough, be, his, was, were), the contraction for to, into, or by is used, but the following word cannot be contracted — to do so would violate the Lower Sign Rule [see 7.4]. Example:

"To be or not to be," Erik recited as he went into his classroom.

Although the part-word contractions be, con, dis, and com are used only at the beginning of a word or at the beginning of a line in a divided word, this does not prevent them from being preceded by the contractions for to, into, or by. Example:

Liz went by commuter train to Disraeli Street.

To, into, and by may be contracted and joined to each other, so long as there is contact with a dot 1 or dot 4. Example:

I'll stop by to say hello.
8.1e *To, into, and by at the end of a braille line.* Occasionally there is not room at the end of a line for the contraction *to, into,* or *by* and at least the first syllable of the following word, but there is room to spell out *to, into,* or *by.* Because the braille reader is more familiar with contractions, it is preferable not to spell out the word. Instead, take the contraction to the next line. Example:

*Jacki wants to go to Colorado Springs to visit John and see the Air Force Academy.*

Drill 24

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. Innocent bystanders at the scene of a crime may be unwilling to testify.
2. Jason will have to have his credentials by the end of the week.
3. He gets into more trouble than most little boys.
4. Mr. Good will drop by the office to make inquiries concerning the new filing system.
5. By this evening I hope to complete the study.
6. From 1993 to 1997, Toby studied aerodynamics.
7. Stephen made a quick trip from Chicago to Reno by way of St. Louis.
8. JOHN BY GOES TO CANADA is a good Canadian history book.
9. "By the way, will you be able to meet me at nine in the morning?" Mr. Byrd asked his brother-in-law.
10. He was greeted by "Hello, you old so-and-so!" as he entered the room.
11. It is clear (to me, anyway) that the enterprise will be a complete failure.
12. His book, in my opinion, is very poorly written—to be perfectly frank.
13. She complained bitterly: "To've been prepared might've prevented the disaster."
14. He took his daughter into his study and gave her a stern lecture.
15. By being as inconspicuous as possible, he was able to enter the arena unobserved.
16. You can hardly expect Pat to consent to moving in with her in-laws.
17. A rise in the cost of living is an inevitable by-product of war.

(continued)
18. Automobiles began to be popular toward the end of the second decade of the twentieth century.
19. Bit by bit, he was winning the respect of the well-to-do merchant.
20. Toshi hurriedly paid for her ticket but she still missed her train—by just seconds.
21. His letter said that by May 1 he will have completed his basic training.
22. TO HAVE AND TO HOLD is a novel depicting early colonial life.
23. The job opening you asked me to look into seems to be very attractive.
24. On his way to and from school he likes to stop and talk with the little old gentleman.
25. With continued effort he will attain his goal by and by.
26. Tomas stopped by to remind me of our dinner date.

If it is desirable to divide this lesson into two sections, the first 23 sentences in Exercise 8 may be assigned at this time, as they relate only to the material studied in the unit to this point.

8.2 The Double-Letter Signs and \textit{ea} Sign [XIII.42]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contraction</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>::</td>
<td>bb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::</td>
<td>cc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::</td>
<td>dd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::</td>
<td>ff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::</td>
<td>gg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textbf{8.2a Used only within words.} Note that, in addition to the meanings given above, each of these characters is also used to represent some other contraction or punctuation. Some represent whole words, others act as contractions at the beginning of words, and some appear at the end of words as punctuation. To prevent confusion, a rule has been adopted that when these characters are used to represent the double-letter signs or the \textit{ea} sign, they are used \textit{only} between letters and/or contractions within a word. For that reason they are sometimes called the "sandwich contractions." Examples:

Bobby occupy added puffy eggs tease

Consequently, these contractions cannot be used at the beginning or the end of a word. Nor can they be used in contact with punctuation or composition signs. Examples:

easy tea sheriff's SeaCliff Apts. ebb-tide

\textit{easy} \textit{tea} \textit{cliff's} \textit{sea\_cliff} \textit{ebb\_tide}
• Keep in mind: Although the *ea* sign is used in a word like *feature*, where such a word is divided between lines (fe/a/ture), the contraction is not used because it would then be in contact with a hyphen.

8.2b Preserving the usual form of a base word beginning with *ea*. When a word beginning with *ea* is preceded by a prefix or another word resulting in the formation of a different word, the *ea* contraction is not used because it would change the usual braille form of the base word. Thus, the *ea* contraction is not used in *uneasy, anteater*, or *northeast* because it would not be used in *easy, eater, or east*.

8.2c Base word and a prefix. Many words that originally were formed from a base or root plus a prefix have become so common that most dictionaries no longer recognize the prefix. In easily recognized words such as *abbreviate, accept, accent, address, addict, affect, aggrieved*, and *disease*, the old prefix is ignored and the *ea* or double letter contractions are used. Examples:

```
address  ❌️пресс ❌️ект ❌️исease
```

As with other contractions, where the prefix is noted as such in the dictionary and the use of an overlapping contraction would clearly have an adverse affect on pronunciation, the contraction is not used. Examples:

```
preamble  ❌️реджуст  ❌️убас
```

8.2d Base word and a suffix. When a word ends with the letters *bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, or ea*, the contractions cannot be used. However, if such a word is followed by a suffix, the contractions are used. For example, although these contractions may not be used in *stiff, puff, or ebb*, they are used in *stiffly, puffed, and ebbing*.

These contractions are also used when the final consonant of a word is doubled before adding suffixes such as *ed, en, er, and ing* because they are "sandwiched" in between other letters and the use of the contraction does not overlap the letters of a base word and its suffix. Examples:

```
rubbing  ❌️едд  ❌️идден  ❌️лджер
```

Where a contraction would overlap the letters of a root/base word and a suffix, however, the contraction cannot be used. Examples:

```
permeable  ❌️илейж  ❌️леагинус
```
EXCEPTION: When the suffixes *ate, an, or al* are added to a base/root word ending in *e*, the *ea* contraction is used. Examples:

- permeate
- delineate
- gigantean
- venereal
- European
- subterranean

Transcribers should take care to look up words that they are not sure of, for some can be deceptive. For example, *lineage* (lin/e/age), referring to ancestry, appears to have the suffix *age*. But this is not the case as the origin of *lineage* is the Old French word *lignage*. Because this is a base word that has no suffix, the *ea* contraction is used. When the word *lineage* is spelled *lineage* (line/age) and refers to the alignment of lines on a page, *age* is a suffix and the *ea* contraction is not used.

8.2e **Solid compound words.** Although these contractions are not used in *tea, sea, or egg*, they are used in the compound words *teacup, seashore, and egghead*. If, however, the letters comprising any of these contractions fall partly into one component of a compound word and partly into the other, the contraction is not used. Examples:

- pineapple
- dumbbell
- headdress
- poleax

8.2f **Causing difficulty in pronunciation.** These contractions are not used if their use would cause difficulty in the recognition or the pronunciation of the word by combining the letters of a dieresis (two adjacent vowels pronounced separately). Example:

- genealogy

8.2g **In trigraphs and diphthongs.** In the trigraph *eau* the *ea* sign is used because both letters of the contraction fall within the same syllable. Examples:

- tableau
- beau

When two adjacent vowels combine to create one sound (a diphthong), as in *paean* (pae/an), they must not be separated by the use of a contraction.

8.2h **Contraction preferences.** The contractions for *bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, and ea* are the least favored of all one-cell contractions because syllable division usually occurs between double consonants. By using other contractions, proper pronunciation is more likely to be preserved. When a choice must be made between contractions, *any other one-cell contraction is preferred over them*. Examples:
8.3 More Short-Form Words [XVI]

Following are six more short-form words to be memorized. If the word \textit{to}, \textit{into}, or \textit{by} falls before a word that has a short-form, the contraction is used and joined to the short-form word.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short-form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Short-form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Short-form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ab</td>
<td>about</td>
<td>(be)c</td>
<td>because</td>
<td>f(st)</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abv</td>
<td>above</td>
<td>(be)l</td>
<td>below</td>
<td>grt</td>
<td>great</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

Because of the rains, the water above the falls was swift. Below the falls it fell first into a deep pool and then rushed about the great rocks.

Drill 25

Practice brailing the following words and sentences. In the word section, leave three spaces between words and do not divide words between lines. In the numbered section, divide words as usual.

rubber effective rabble scaffold adds coffee jiggle hobbled zealot meander pebble create middle succotash meddle Mecca idea ideal southeast react bleach bleed dabble daddy

1. When he saw the cop put his finger on the trigger he gave up the struggle.
2. Succor was not slow in arriving for the disaster sufferers; in fact it was amazingly quick.
3. "You are a very good little girl, Effie," said Aunt Maggie.
4. You may think it odd, but I simply will not eat cabbage in any form.
5. "I kin go out with a diff’rent girl every night," said the sheriff’s son.

(continued)
6. She was a stiff-necked old aristocrat with an impressive genealogy who refused to mingle with the rabble.
7. The leaders of the plot will be tried for treason.
8. Write a letter saying, first of all, that we are committed and will not tolerate being treated like riffraff.
9. Hiding below the stairs, Mr. Eaton was puffing contentedly on a huge cigar.
10. Eddie paid fifteen hundred dollars for his first car and he is proud as a peacock.
11. For dinner we served the farmhands meatloaf, potatoes and gravy, eggplant, carrot and cabbage salad, bread, coffee, peaches and cream, and white cake topped with fluffy marshmallow frosting.
12. Her wedding bouquet was made of spirea and baby's breath.
13. In 1933 Leander and his boys were arrested as the result of a brawl near a St. Louis speakeasy.
14. The house was deserted and an uneaten meal was still spread on the table.
15. My cousin was taken prisoner by the Chinese Communists in the Korean War.
16. I was agreeably surprised by the fine delivery of the valedictory speech, which was given at the baccalaureate exercises.
17. Mr. Webb loves his old Rambler because it handles so well and he still gets great gas mileage, but above all, he just loves the way it looks.
18. He left his Chevrolet at the garage because he needed to have the carburetor readjusted and the wheels realigned.
19. I believe that the seller will accept considerably less than the price he quoted.
20. President Truman made monkeys out of the political wiseacres who were predicting a Republican victory in 1948.
21. Tina's new beau is picking her up about eight and they are going to the theater.
22. The streets were littered with rubble following the storm.
23. It took a tremendous effort for Uncle Tobias to hobble up the steps because he is disabled by arthritis.
24. When the calisthenics were finished, the teacher gathered up the dumbbells and Indian clubs.
25. The doctor padded the area above and below the injury.
26. Luci avoided the accident by quick thinking.
Reading Practice

Write the following sentences in longhand. Compare your work with the print version in Appendix A.

[Sentences and text on the page]
EXERCISE

Prepare the following exercise for submission to the instructor. Correspondence students: Submit the entire exercise at one time and ignore the line of asterisks between sentences #23 and #24.

LESSON 8

1. By curtailing his expenses sharply, he was able to save enough to go to college.
2. It will take a good four hours to go from Baltimore to Los Angeles by jet.
3. His research on this project will continue into the next decade.
4. "What do you expect by 'due process of law'?" asked the judge sternly.
5. From the radio issued the voice of a crooner pouring his heart and soul into "To Each His Own."
6. The story (to be continued in the next issue) is filled with horror and suspense.
7. The problems of space travel—to a little boy this is a fascinating subject—were discussed at length in Bob To's essay.
8. "Don't make me devote the whole evenin' to 'rithmetic," cried Benny.
9. It will be to his advantage to study chemistry in high school, since he is planning to be a doctor.
10. Luke is going to compete in the track meet as a discus thrower.
11. A quick look into the bylaws showed that they were amended to permit voting by proxy.
12. He was enthralled by A TRIP TO THE MOON by Jules Verne.
13. The strikers refused to let anybody go into or out of the plant.
14. The ship hove to a few miles outside the harbor.
15. He sat on the edge of the raft lazily swinging his legs to and fro.
16. His analysis is, by and large, the most convincing I have heard.
17. Apparently the bill was paid, but the matter will be looked into.
18. We are determined to recover our property by hook or by crook.
19. "What will this all come to?" she wailed.
20. By constantly reminding us to "overcome," Martin Luther King gave us hope and pride.
21. "The express letter was to have arrived by 12 noon," said Christopher.
22. Sam put his books into his briefcase.
23. Don't make a "to-do" over her present; I am sure Mom will like it.

* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *

8 - 10 TOC -- INDEX
24. The alchemists of the Middle Ages were preoccupied with trying to change the baser metals into gold.

25. By about the first of July, he says he will be ready to open his office in that well-to-do neighborhood and we will get paid what he owes us.

26. A determined juror kept doggedly reasserting his belief that the accused was innocent.

27. The motto that Cyril lives by is "Early to bed, early to rise, makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise."

28. The sheriff then placed handcuffs on the ruffians and led them off to jail.

29. For little Bobby's breakfast Pearl was preparing bacon and eggs.

30. Following the meeting of the Ways and Means Committee, the affable hostess served tea and very good muffins.

31. It's the bailiff's duty to keep order in the courtroom.

32. The theater on Byron Street is featuring a great movie this evening.

33. It has been a custom in our household to serve eggnog during the Christmas season.

34. The widespread use of penicillin and other antibiotics considerably reduced the danger from certain diseases.

35. Have a good trip, and above all, stay below the speed limit.

36. Eddie's compass showed that we were headed southeast.

37. The Charge of the Light Brigade took place during the Crimean War.

38. The Bible says that "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth."

39. His entire demeanor was permeated with an air of insufferable conceit.

40. The letter said that at last David was to realize his dream of becoming the proprietor of a small acreage.

41. Brown sugar on oatmeal or Cream of Wheat provides quick energy on a cold morning.

42. The handbill said: "We trace any genealogy and guarantee to provide you with an imposing lineage."

43. Democracy is rule "of, by, and for the people."

44. His address to the affiliate accentuated his eccentricities.

45. When I make Mom's muffins I readjust the spices to make them tastier and add pineapple.

46. Because the weather was fair the eastern sky was lighted by the soft rays of a roseate dawn.

47. The scene in the humble cottage presented a tableau of heart-warming domestic bliss and harmony.

48. The funeral sermon was full of paeans of praise for the deceased leader.

49. "Be nice to Mr. Smith. We can't afford to dis our best customer."
SUMMARY OF CONTRACTION USAGE
Lower Signs

III. Lower Signs In Succession Rule

A. Any number of lower-sign contractions may follow one another without a space provided that one of them is in contact with a character containing dot 1 or dot 4.

\[ \text{to disengage} \]  \\
\[ \text{to disen-} \]  \\
\[ \text{gage} \]

B. When a series of lower signs is not in contact with a dot 1 or 4, the last possible contraction is spelled out.

\[ \text{to disen-} \]  \\
\[ \text{gage} \]

IV. Whole-Word Contractions  \( \text{(in, enough, be, his, was, were, to, into, by)} \)

A. \( \text{In, enough, be, his, was, were} \)

1. Must stand alone. Cannot be in contact with a letter, word, contraction, or punctuation that either precedes or follows it.

\[ \text{Let it be enough for now.} \]  \\
\[ \text{"Were you?"} \]  \\
\[ \text{his/hers} \]  \\
\[ \text{break-in} \]  \\
\[ \text{break-in} \]

2. May be preceded by composition signs. Were you?

B. \( \text{To, into, by} \)

1. These contractions cannot stand alone. They must be joined to the following word, contraction, number, or composition sign.

\[ \text{by train} \]  \\
\[ \text{by train} \]  \\
\[ \text{by train} \]

2. These contractions cannot be used in hyphenated compound words.

\[ \text{by-and-by} \]

3. With punctuation

\[ \text{a) Can be preceded by punctuation.} \]  \\
\[ \text{b) Cannot be followed by punctuation.} \]

\[ \text{I'll drop by.} \]  \\
\[ \text{into/out of} \]
4. With composition signs
   a) Can be preceded by composition signs
      By now "By now"
   b) Can be followed by composition signs.
      By George!

5. When one of these words comes before any other whole-word lower-sign, the last possible contraction must be spelled out. to be

6. These contractions are used when they come before part-word lower signs.
   by consent to distract

7. When the contraction for into cannot be used, the in should be contracted.
   Go into "O'Brians."

8. When there is not room at the end of a line for one of these contractions and the following word or portion thereof, take the contraction to the next line.

V. Part-Word Contractions (in, en, be, con, dis, com, bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, ea)

A. In, en
   Are used whenever they occur as long as they are in contact with a sign containing a dot 1 or 4.
   ingenious ingenuous
   mis- may-
   conduct be

B. Be, con, dis
   1. Are used only when they constitute an entire syllable at the beginning of a word — or at the beginning of a line in a divided word unless they constitute the last syllable of such a divided word.
      been belief disc distant
      mis- may-
      conduct be

   2. Are used following the hyphen in a hyphenated compound word.
      make-believe dual-control

   3. Are not used when in contact with the hyphen in syllabicated words.
      con-ta-gion dis-creet

   4. Are not used next to a slash. distrust/dismay
   5. Are used following punctuation, but not preceding it.
      O'Connell (be)tray
   6. The contraction for con cannot be used as a whole word as in con game.
C. *Com*

1. Is used only at the beginning of a word or at the beginning of a line in a divided word—but it need not constitute a syllable.

   come \* com \* comb \* ex- \* commander \* ex-

2. Cannot be used when in contact with a hyphen, apostrophe, dash or slash—but can follow opening quotation marks.

   ex-commander ex-comm go/come Hey!—come on.

   com'ere "Come in." com'

D. *Be, con, dis, com* in abbreviations

These contractions can be used in the abbreviation of a word only when they can be used in the whole word—unless the contraction would constitute the entire abbreviation.

   Benj. (Benjamin) dist. (district) Con. (Concerto) ex-con Belg. (Belgium)

E. *Bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, ea*

1. Are used only between letters and/or contractions within a word.

   sniffs sniffed sniff

2. Are never used when in contact with punctuation.

   diff'rent sheriff's egg-shaped sea-island feature

F. Part-word contractions are not used when their use would alter the usual form of a word or cause difficulty in pronunciation.

   uneasy overblended undisturbed disingenuous genealogy impermeable

   [not] un(ea)sy ov(er)(ble)nd(ed) un(dis)turb(ed) [or] undi(st)urb(ed) (dis)(ing)(en)u(ou)s g(en)(ea)logy imp(er)m(ea)(ble)

   [not] imp(er)m(ea)(ble)
9.1 In General [XIV.45]

Like the contraction for *into*, the contractions about to be studied are all two-cell configurations. Initial-letter contractions are formed by preceding the initial letter or initial contraction of the word by dot 5, dots 45, or dots 456. So, for instance, the letter *d* standing alone is the word *do*, but when *d* is immediately preceded by dot 5 the word becomes *day*—which can be used for the whole word *day* or as part of the word *yesterday*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dot 5</th>
<th>Dots 45</th>
<th>Dots 456</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ever</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>here</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lord</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>under</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td>upon     : ::</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td>word     : ::</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>through</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>where</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ought</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there</td>
<td>: ::</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9.1a **Original pronunciation must be maintained.** In general, initial-letter contractions are used both as whole words and as parts of words when they retain their original sound. Thus initial-letter contractions are used in the following examples:

- ye(st)(er)(day)
- gr(and)(father)
- s(mother)(ed)
- (time)r
- (young)(st)(er)
- (where)(upon)
- (here)'ll
- (part)y

- (ever)y(where)
- ad(here)s
- re(name)d
- m(ar)i(time)
- (there)by
- (ought)n’t
- (spirit)ual
- (wh)ole(some)

- cl(ever)
- un(known)
- (question)naire
- (character)i(st)ic
- (for)e(word)
- (under)(world)
- (some)(time)

- s(ever)al
- l(and)(lord)
- b(right)
- (work)(ing)
- (through)(ou)t
- (their)s

As long as the original sound of the word is maintained, initial-letter contractions are used in proper names, as parts of hyphenated compound expressions, and in dialectal words containing an apostrophe. Examples:

- Doubleday's Happy-Times Child Care
- G'day, m'lord

9.1b **When original pronunciation is lost.** Do not use these contractions in words where the sound of the original word is no longer present. For example:

- Do not use *ever* in *evert*, *severe*, or *fever*.
- Do not use *here* in *heresy*.
- Do not use *time* in *centime* or *centimeter*.
- Do not use *under* in *launder* or *flounder*.
- Do not use *there* in *ethereal*.
- Do not use *word* in *sword*.
- Do not use *these* in *theses*.
- Do not use *some* in *chromosome* or *gasometer*.
- Do not use *had* in *hadji* or *shadow*.

9.2 Exceptions to the General Rule  [XIV.45.a]

9.2a **Know.** Even though the original sound is not maintained, the contraction for *know* is used in *knowledgeable* and *acknowledge* and their derivatives.
9.2b *Ought.* The contraction for *ought* is used whether the word is pronounced *ôt* as in *bought,* or *out* as in *doughty.* It is also used in *drought* whether pronounced *drou*t* or *drou*th. However, the contraction should not be used in *Houghton* when the letter combination is pronounced like a long *o,* as in *Houghton Mifflin* or *Houghton, Michigan.*

9.2c *One.* In most cases the contraction for *one* is used when *o* and *n* are in the same syllable, even though the combination does not have the sound of *one.* Thus, the contraction is used in words like *gone,* *phone,* *honest,* *money,* and *monetary.*

The *one* contraction is not used when *n* begins a new syllable. Consequently, it is not used in words like *pho/net/ic,* *pi/o/neer,* *colo/nel,* *cor/o/net,* or *a/nem/o/ne.* And, as with all contractions, it cannot be used when part of the letters of the contraction fall into the base word and part into a suffix, as in *commoner,* *commonest,* *baronet,* and *luncheonette.*

9.2d *Some.* The contraction for *some* is used only where the letters it represents retain their original sound and forms a complete syllable in the base word. For example, this contraction is used in *handsome,* *handsomer,* and *handsomest,* because it retains the sound of *some* and it also constitutes a complete syllable in the base word *handsome.* The contraction for *some* cannot be used in words like *blossomed* and *ransomed,* because the syllable *some* does not appear in the base words *blossom* and *ransom.* In the word *som/er/sault,* the contraction for *some* is not used because the syllable division comes between the *m* and the *e,* and therefore, *some* is not a complete syllable in the base word.

9.2e *Part.* Unless other rules prohibit, the contraction for *part* is used whether it retains the original sound or not, as in *particular,* *Spartan,* and *partial.* Like all contractions, initial-letter contractions cannot be used if they would overlap a prefix and a base/root word. Therefore, the contraction for *part* cannot be used in words where *par* is a prefix, as in *partake,* *partook,* and *parterre.*

**Drill 26**

Practice by brailling the following words and sentences. In the word section, leave three spaces between words and do not divide words between lines. In the numbered section, divide words as usual.

ransom ransomed blossom blossomed handsome handsomer lonesome lonesomest party partook partial parterre common commoner commonest know knowledge acknowledge ought brought drought Houghton honest gone honey alone abalone phonetics pioneer

1. Great Scott! You ought to know you cannot remain here forever without work or money.
2. Quick! Write the name and address on the letter because I'm late.
3. We haven't paid them yet because there can be no question of our right to insist upon the work being done promptly under the terms of the contract.
4. We were rather surprised to learn that many of our neighborhood boys had taken part in the street riots and that some had been named as instigators.

(continued)
5. In these days of supersonic speed one can travel to any part of the world in little or no time at all.
6. To those who have character and a spirit of adventure the Navy is very appealing.
7. The young couple is about to purchase their first home with the help of their families, who both have above average incomes.
8. Wordsworth referred to the skylark as the "Ethereal Minstrel, pilgrim of the sky."
9. The mothers and fathers first partook of a light lunch of biscuits and honey and tea and then went out onto the veranda and watched the youngsters turning somersaults and cartwheels.
10. Germany invaded Poland in September, 1939, whereupon the British, whose word had been pledged, proclaimed a state of war.
11. "Surely, m'lord, we can't seat the good Duchess below the salt!" said the pompous butler.

9.3 Preference for One-Cell Contractions [X.35.b]

Unless space can be saved, a one-cell contraction or two one-cell contractions are usually preferred over a two-cell contraction. Examples:

- (st)on(ed)  [not]  (st)(one)d  adh(er)(er)  [not]  ad(here)r
- adh(er)(ed)  [not]  ad(here)d  coh(er)(en)t  [not]  co(here)nt
- prison(er)  [not]  pris(one)r  (com)p(on)en)t  [not]  (com)p(one)nt
- ha(dd)ock  [not]  (had)dock  P(ar)(the)non  [not]  (Part)h(en)on
- on(er)(ou)s  [not]  (one)r(ou)s

Exceptions:
Apartheid. The two-cell contraction for part is used in apartheid to indicate proper pronunciation, even though it uses more space.

Haddock. The dd contraction is preferred over the had contraction in haddock. However, when the word is divided between braille lines, the had contraction is used.

9.4 Digraphs [X.34.b.(5)]

Do not use a contraction if its use would disturb the pronunciation of a digraph (when two letters are pronounced as one sound). Examples:

- atmosph(er)e  [not]  atmosp(her)  Boone  [not]  Bo(one)
9.5 Choosing between Consecutive Contractions [X.35.c, XIV.45.f]

Where a choice must be made between two consecutive contractions, preference is given to the contraction that more nearly indicates correct pronunciation. Examples:

(wh)(er)(ever) [not] (where)v(er)
(wh)(er)e'(er) [not] (where)'(er)
mu(st)h [not] mus(th)
di(spirit)(ed) [not] (dis)pirit(ed)

9.6 Proper Names

Care should be taken when transcribing proper names. Initial-letter contractions should be used in proper names only when the transcriber is certain of the pronunciation. If the proper pronunciation cannot be determined, these contractions should not be used. Examples:

Use *many* in **Germany**
Do not use *had* in **Hades**
Use *part* in **Spartan**
Do not use *time* in **Mortimer**
Use *word* in **Wordsworth**
Do not use *ought* in **Houghton**
Use *lord* in **Gaylord**
Do not use *one* in **Hermione**
Use *right* in **Brighton**
Do not use *some* in **Somerset**

9.7 More Short-Form Words [XVI]

Following are six more short-form words to be memorized.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short-form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Short-form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Short-form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ac</td>
<td>according</td>
<td>brl</td>
<td>braille</td>
<td>o'c</td>
<td>o'clock or oclock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alw</td>
<td>always</td>
<td>(ch)n</td>
<td>children</td>
<td>p(er)h</td>
<td>perhaps</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

According to Dad, good children who read braille always go to bed at nine o'clock — perhaps later on week-ends.
Drill 27

Practice by brailling the following words and sentences. In the word section, leave three spaces between words and do not divide words between lines. In the numbered section, divide words as usual.

stone stoned stoning phone phoned coherent sphere atmosphere hemisphere heretic heresy adhered adhere under thunder launder name named enamel Germany fright right-handed Brighton Mortimer centimeter Hades hadji

1. Beverly comforted her small brother by saying, "Don't be dispirited. Mother said in her letter that she and Father will take us fishing one day soon."
2. "Upon my word! How can you ever forget the words of ‘The Lord's Prayer’?" Grandmother scolded young Gaylord.
3. According to our teacher, everyone ought to take some time each day for reading because to read is to know.
4. We hope that the party and the braille book of world maps will be a big surprise for Grandfather, whose birthday we will celebrate at two o'clock next Friday.
5. Ever since he came into money, he thought he'd be treated like a king every day wherever he went.
6. The characteristics of the adult are inherent in the chromosomes of the embryo.
7. Through the untimely death of the doughty captain the entire ship was plunged into an atmosphere of gloom.
8. The professor reluctantly acknowledges that perhaps those students who cannot make a good grade need more time to complete their theses, but questions their right to protest.
9. Unquestionably, the onerous task of participating in the ceremonies is too burdensome for me to assume.
10. Eight-year-old Thaddeus began his Mother's Day poem with: "Where'er I wander, where'er I roam, I sit there and ponder on Mother and home."
11. Daniel Boone worked hard to erect a fort at Boonesboro.
12. He is the handsomest little boy in the class and therefore he is always teased and chased by the little girls.
13. The housemother admonished the girls and told them severely that she was not about to serve dessert until the finnan haddie had been eaten.
14. His feverish dreams were haunted by these shadowy figures of children from out of his past.
15. To children the arrival of Santa Claus is pure delight.
Reading Practice

Write the following sentences in longhand. Compare your work with the print version in Appendix A.
EXERCISE

Prepare the following exercise for submission to the instructor.

LESSON 9

1. Yesterday, at eight o'clock, Mortimer started to work on his first part-time job for his father-in-law.
2. The name of Lord Nelson, who defeated the French fleet at Trafalgar, is revered by the British people.
3. Some of the questions in the questionnaire had to be answered “yes” or “no.”
4. To say that wherever he went he was under the close scrutiny of the police is not quite right.
5. The youngsters are planning a big surprise for their father for Father's Day.
6. Though lonesome and frightened, the young lad was none the worse for the night spent in the woods.
7. "One has to spend according to one's income—you cannot go on forever spending more money than you earn," said Aunt Hedda, always giving advice.
8. Here and there the sun peeped through the clouds, creating little shadows.
9. I don't know whether or not I want to go to Germany, as I don't understand a word of the language.
10. "How many guests do you expect at the party?" asked the spirited young man.
11. One of the outstanding characters in the play is a typical man of the world who reads braille.
12. "These are the times that try men's souls," wrote Tom Paine.
13. Those whose houses are made of glass ought not to throw stones.
14. Many good fairy tales start with the words "Once upon a time."
15. Rebecca's letter said that several cases of typhoid fever were reported in the flooded area.
16. It has been said that one might move the world with a lever if he had something to rest it upon.
17. He continued to adhere to his beliefs even though he was about to be condemned as a heretic.
18. Those of us whose lives are spent in the Western Hemisphere know little of life in the Orient.
19. Margaret Thatcher was the acknowledged leader of the British Conservative Party, and in her time was one of the most commanding women in the world.
20. Sarah was unable to smother a yawn as James continued to recite the boring particulars of his journey.
21. To this day the name of Daniel Boone is familiar to every Kentuckian.
22. Mrs. Hadley was impressed with the beauty of the Parthenon.
23. Chelsea loved Paris where she got great buys, including a miniature sword for which she paid only a few centimes.

24. Sir Francis Drake began his maritime career by plundering Spanish galleons.

25. Because money laundering is illegal it is always done in secret.

26. Many doctoral theses involve hard and painstaking work.

27. The old abandoned enamelworks is being leased for a new factory.

28. The copyright for this book is owned by Houghton Mifflin Co.

29. PARADISE LOST by John Milton tells of Lucifer's fall from ethereal splendor to the underworld of Hades.

30. Perhaps I will buy a new stove because my old-time gas range is not equipped with a timer.

31. My grandmother had saved enough coupons for a handsome new set of luggage.

32. Throughout the nineteen thirties, known as the drought years, many farmers were hard-pressed for money and lost their farms.

33. John Paul Jones was one of the early pioneers of the American Navy.

34. Abraham Lincoln was known by the nickname "Honest Abe."

35. Whereas Colonel Doubleday cherished the family heirlooms even though they had no monetary value, his wife regarded them with disdain.

36. Just above Glasgow is one of the handsomest villas in Scotland, which has been purchased by the baronet.

37. Spring had arrived early, and the lovely anemones had blossomed in the nearby woods.

38. One's hereditary characteristics are determined by his chromosomes.

39. His lordship, a real character, partook generously of the sparkling beverage and fell into a deep reverie.

40. The response from the prisoner of war to the chaplain's words of solace was incoherent.

41. Everett was too dispirited to participate in the holiday festivities.

42. OF HUMAN BONDAGE was one of W. Somerset Maugham's earliest successes.

43. Wherever he goes he orders haddock or swordfish.

44. Quick, duck down here below the wall so mother cannot find us.

45. His gift to the children is a little below average as he is not as prosperous now as he has been heretofore.

46. "Going! Going! Gone!" shouted the young seller of the valuable mother-of-pearl brooch.
Lesson 10

Final-Letter Contractions, More Short-Form Words

10.1 Final-Letter Contractions  [XV.46]

10.1a In general. Final-letter contractions are two-cell contractions that are formed by preceding the final letter of common letter combinations by dots 46, dots 56, or dot 6. The following is a complete list of these contractions. Note that in each column the contractions are listed alphabetically using the last letter of the letter grouping.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dots 46</th>
<th>Dots 56</th>
<th>Dot 6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ound</td>
<td>-ence</td>
<td>-ation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ance</td>
<td>-ong</td>
<td>-ful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ion</td>
<td>-tion</td>
<td>-ity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-less</td>
<td>-ness</td>
<td>-ally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ount</td>
<td>-ment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dots 46 also form the emphasis indicator, dots 56 the letter indicator (both to be studied later), and dot 6 the capital indicator. These composition signs nearly always appear at the beginning of a word. To avoid confusion with these composition signs, final-letter contractions are used only in the middle or at the end of a word or name.

Examples:

(ar)(ound) b(ound)(ar)y assi(st)(ance) (ch)(ance)llor
prec(s)(ion) proces(s)(ion)al hope(less) b(less)(ed)
c(ount) m(ount)a(in) provid(ence) h(ence)(for)(th)
(be)l(ong) m(ong)rel hope(ful) fai(th)(ful)ly
(con)(st)itu(tion)al edi(tion) firm(less) T(en)(ness)ee
me(ment)o (com)(ment) cav(ity) p(ity)(ing)
(st)(ation)(ar)y n(ation) re(ally) r(ally)(ing)
L(ance) Fr(ance)s Sp(ence)r S(ally)

They are also used when they appear at the beginning of a line in a divided word. Thus:

reli-(ance) vital-(ity) hope-(less)(ness) funda-(ment)al proposi-(tion)
However, final-letter contractions are never used in words such as *ancestor, lesson, encephalitis, fulfill, mental,* and other words where the letters of the contractions occur at the beginning of the word.

10.1b **Part words only.** Use final-letter contractions for parts of words only. They cannot be used for whole words such as *less, ally,* or *Sion.*

10.1c **Base word and a prefix.** When a word begins with the letters of one of these contractions, the contraction cannot be used. When a prefix is added to such a word the final-letter contraction is still not used, even if it is divided between braille lines, for to do so would change the usual appearance of the base word. Examples:

```
lesson unless(ed) un- fulfill unfulfill(ed) un-
lesson(ed) fulfill(ed)
```

As you learned in **Lesson 7,** when a prefix is added to a word that starts with *con,* the contraction for *con* cannot be used. In order to facilitate easy recognition and pronunciation in such words as *incongruous* and *uncongealed,* where the *con* contraction is not used, the contraction for *ong* is not used either. Thus:

```
(con)gru(ou)s (in)congru(ou)s (con)g(ea)l(ed) uncong(ea)l(ed)
```

- Note: Some words, such as the word *unless,* are deceptive. Although this word might appear to be a base word plus a prefix, it is not. The origin of *unless* is the Middle English word *onlesse,* which is one word and therefore the contraction for *less* is used.

10.1d **Base word and a suffix.** When a contraction would overlap a root/base word and a suffix, a final-letter contraction cannot be used. Examples:

```
fruity squally (ch)iefta(in)ess citiz(en)ess
```

- Note that when a suffix is added to *chieftain* and *citizen* the retention of the final contraction in the base word preserves the usual braille form of the word.

**EXCEPTION:** Some easily read words do not follow this rule and use the final-letter contraction even though it overlaps the base word and the suffix. Examples:

```
equ(ally) tot(ally) actu(ally) visu(ally)
re(ally) b(ar)o(ness) lio(ness) gov(er)(ness)
```
10.1d(1) *-ation*. The contraction for *ation* is used in preference to the *a* and *tion* signs in words like *station* and *application* because it saves more space. It is also used in preference to the *ea* contraction, as in *creation* — *cre(ation)* not *cr(ea)(tion)*. However, where it is necessary to divide such words between lines and there is room for the *a* on the first line, the contraction for *tion* is used on the following line. Examples:

(con)c(en)tra-
radia-
devia-
(in)vita-
cre-
(tion),
(tion),
(tion)s
(tion)al
(tion)

10.1d(2) *Full and ful*. Pay attention to words that begin or end with *full* and *ful*. In the whole word *full* the contraction for *ful* is not used because it would begin the word. In order to preserve the usual appearance of the word, when a prefix or another word is joined to it to form a compound word, the contraction is still not used. Examples:

full
tea spoonfull
chock-full
FULL	TEASPOONFULL	OCK-FULL

*Ful*, on the other hand, is not a word by itself, and when it occurs at the end of a word it is always a suffix. In words ending in *ful*, such as *brimful* and *teaspoonful* (the preferred spellings), the *ful* contraction is used. Examples:

brimful
chockful
hopeful
wonderful
BRIMFUL	OCKFULL	HOPEFUL	WONDFULL

And, when a second suffix is added, such as *ly*, to a word ending in *ful*, the contraction for *ful* is used. Examples:

hopefully
wonderfully
beautifully
HOPEFULLY	WONDERFULLY	BEAUTIFULLY

10.1d(3) *-ance and -ence*. Although the general rule gives preference to a one-cell contraction over a two-cell contraction, use a two-cell contraction if space can be saved (§9.3). And, when *-ence* is followed by *d* or *r*, it is the preferred contraction even though no space is saved. Examples:

(th)(ence) [not] (the)nce
(com)m(ence)d [not] (com)m(en)c(ed)
d(ance)d [not] danc(ed)
SP(ence)r [not] SP(en)c(er)
10.1e **In contact with an apostrophe or hyphen.** A final-letter contraction cannot follow an apostrophe or a hyphen. Thus, the final-letter contraction is not used in *grey'ound*, nor in a hyphenated word such as *re-ally*, nor in syllabically divided words. Example:

"I'm re-allying with the Roundheads, so 'enceforth you can call me 'Mr. Par- lia-ment'!"

10.1f **Digraphs and trigraphs.** As with all contractions, do not use a final-letter contraction if it would disturb the pronunciation of a digraph or trigraph. Thus, the *ity* sign is not used in *hoity-toity*.

10.1g **Preserving pronunciation.** Do not use a contraction when two adjoining consonants are pronounced separately and the use of the contraction would cause difficulty in recognition or pronunciation, as in *mongoose* and *fiancé*.

10.2 **More Short-Form Words** [XVI]

Following are six more short-form words to be memorized.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short-form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Short-form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Short-form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acr</td>
<td>across</td>
<td>alm</td>
<td>almost</td>
<td>m(st)</td>
<td>must</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al</td>
<td>also</td>
<td>imm</td>
<td>immediate</td>
<td>nec</td>
<td>necessary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

It is necessary for you to look across the street carefully because of an almost immediate danger from fast traffic, and you must also warn the others.

"It is nec acr acr look acr mreac
clearly ac r an alm imm dangy f fa
tratic y y mi al win y ours."
Drill 28

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. He found it necessary but very difficult to dance with Sally.
2. Congress established the Department of Agriculture May 5, 1862.
3. The coroner came to the conclusion that death must have occurred here below the stairs, somewhere around three o'clock in the morning.
4. "Counting the population is known as census-taking," explained the teacher.
5. The stern old judge simply will not countenance reckless driving because it almost always ends in injury or death.
6. In the poem "Each In His Own Tongue," the author reconciles the views of science and religion.
7. The blessing was offered on the shores of beautiful Lake Como, across the bay from the little chapel.
8. When the first witness was removed, it was a great pity that the second witness also lost all semblance of self-control and had to be literally dragged from the courtroom.
9. We hope that the new lessee of the corner building, who has paid his rent in advance, will be less of a nuisance than the former one.
10. Britain was a faithful ally of the United States during two world wars.
11. His letter says that Lawrence did not have encephalitis, as the doctors feared, and that he is now fully recovered and about to visit the children.
12. The ancestors of many Americans arrived in this country as penniless immigrants and had an immediate need for jobs and land.
13. There were no mountains, just a steady up and down-ness to the terrain.
14. At last he recognized the mournful sound in the distance and gasped: "O Gawd! the blood'ound is on my trail!"
15. The old Tennessean was unlessoned in the refinements of polite society.
16. "Above all, I must extend my very warmest congratulations to the new grandfather," he chuckled as he grasped the hand of his lifelong comrade.
17. Thenceforth the squally weather continued without interruption for three days.
18. The hoity-toity governess glanced scornfully at the conglomeration of toys littering the child's bedroom and said, "Perhaps it's time we tidied up here."
19. "That was good; you are very quick and parried the blow with the agility of an experienced fencer," said the fencing instructor.
Reading Practice

Write the following sentences in longhand. Compare your work with the print version in Appendix A.

Welcome to Old Town Inn

Old Town Inn, located in a quaint plantation area, is an intimate guest hotel. Preserving a sense of place, the establishment offers a unique blend of historic significance and original structure.

Guests enjoy a railroad car museum and transportation exhibits. The hotel provides a variety of attractions, including a historic hotel room. Each room is meticulously restored to reflect the original 19th-century design.

Features include:
- Historic area and district
- Business meeting and dining facilities
- Relaxation gardens
- Room service and television
- In-room coffee makers
- Fitness center
- On-site parking
- A choice of staff members
- The unique blend of charm and skill

We welcome coordinate any requests or special arrangements.
Prepare the following exercise for submission to the instructor.

LESSON 10

1. An ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure.
2. "All the world's a stage, and all the men and women merely players: They have their exits and their entrances; and one man in his time plays many parts."
3. "It's always true, new occasions teach new duties," pontificated grandmother.
4. "If necessary, I can cite countless instances in which capital punishment has resulted in the execution of the wrong man," orated the defense attorney.
5. Fortunately, he had the presence of mind to first call the fire department even though it was about three o'clock in the morning.
6. He ruthlessly casts people aside as soon as they have outworn their usefulness.
7. In order to avoid a bumpy flight we must get above the thunderclouds.
8. Thomas Jefferson drafted the Declaration of Independence virtually unaided.
9. Benjamin Franklin was instrumental in persuading France to become an ally of the United States.
10. She had a great love for acting and faithfully performed even when she didn't get paid.
11. Clarence usually arrived late at the office; nevertheless he managed to put out his full quota of work.
12. The letter said that Spencer's ancestors were among the early settlers of Tennessee.
13. The lessons learned through experience make a lasting impression.
15. Hercules shot Nessus with a poisoned arrow for trying to abduct his wife.
16. Terrence’s mental capacity verges upon imbecility.
17. Accused persons are protected from self-incrimination by the Fifth Amendment of our Constitution.
18. Can you braille this recipe for Quick Banana Bread and have it ready for Sally on Tuesday?
19. Allyson was especially fond of her little pet mongoose.
20. The bewildered Londoner inquired of a passer-by on Pennsylvania Avenue, "I say, which is the street to the Grey'ound Bus Station?"
21. The only person we encountered was a disreputable-looking fellow, who spoke in a mongrel tongue that sounded like nothing we had ever heard.
22. According to the announcement, our flight is cancelled on account of poor visibility over the mountains.
23. The recreational facilities of the playground have really undergone some major improvements.

(continued)
24. Because her skills are below average, Frances cannot pass our course in business administration unless she has some special instruction.

25. The Baroness served a beverage with a good fruity flavor.

26. His dreams of romance remained wholly unfulfilled until he met the beautiful French countess.

27. Since her husband's election to Congress she has become rather hoity-toity—and her children are even worse!

28. Every weekend an incongruous conglomeration of guests descends upon her woefully overcrowded country house.

29. When he came riding across the bridge and into the village no one knew whence he had come or anything else concerning his background.

30. The committee will study the recommendations of the Treasury Department experts and an immediate response will be sent to the president.

31. Four columns advanced toward the city from without, and a fifth column cooperated from within.

32. Just a short time ago, science seemed almost powerless in finding a cure for cancer.

33. Perhaps we can make an excursion into the country on Sunday.

34. The tribe was governed by a chieftainess who dispensed justice swiftly and impartially.

35. Martha also has applied for the position of governess that was advertised in the Sunday edition of the Times.
Lesson 11

Short-Form Words
Proper Names

11.1 In General [XVI.47]

Following is a list of all the short-form words used in braille including the twenty-four studied in earlier lessons (in italics). The words in this list have been grouped together in order to facilitate learning through association. A complete alphabetical list of all short-form words can be found in Rule XVI of the official literary code, English Braille American Edition 1994.

* Starred words have special rules.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short-Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Short-Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Short-Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ab</td>
<td>about</td>
<td>*fr</td>
<td>friend</td>
<td>hm</td>
<td>him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abv</td>
<td>above</td>
<td>gd</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>hmf</td>
<td>himself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac</td>
<td>according</td>
<td>grt</td>
<td>great</td>
<td>xs</td>
<td>its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acr</td>
<td>across</td>
<td>imm</td>
<td>immediate</td>
<td>xg</td>
<td>itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*af</td>
<td>after</td>
<td>lr</td>
<td>letter</td>
<td>yr</td>
<td>your</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afn</td>
<td>afternoon</td>
<td>ll</td>
<td>little</td>
<td>yrf</td>
<td>yourself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afw</td>
<td>afterward</td>
<td>m(st)</td>
<td>must</td>
<td>yrvs</td>
<td>yourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ag</td>
<td>again</td>
<td>nec</td>
<td>necessary</td>
<td>h(er)f</td>
<td>herself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ag(st)</td>
<td>against</td>
<td>o‘c</td>
<td>o’clock or oclock</td>
<td>myf</td>
<td>myself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alm</td>
<td>almost</td>
<td>pd</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>(one)f</td>
<td>oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alr</td>
<td>already</td>
<td>p(er)h</td>
<td>perhaps</td>
<td>(ou)rvs</td>
<td>ourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al</td>
<td>also</td>
<td>qk</td>
<td>quick</td>
<td>(the)mvs</td>
<td>themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alt</td>
<td>altogether</td>
<td>tgr</td>
<td>together</td>
<td>dcl</td>
<td>declare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alw</td>
<td>always</td>
<td>cd</td>
<td>could</td>
<td>dclg</td>
<td>declaring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(be)c</td>
<td>because</td>
<td>(sh)d</td>
<td>should</td>
<td>rjc</td>
<td>rejoice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(be)f</td>
<td>before</td>
<td>wd</td>
<td>would</td>
<td>rjcg</td>
<td>rejoicing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(be)h</td>
<td>behind</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>either</td>
<td>(con)cv</td>
<td>conceive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(be)l</td>
<td>below</td>
<td>nei</td>
<td>neither</td>
<td>(con)cvg</td>
<td>conceiving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(be)n</td>
<td>beneath</td>
<td>m(ch)</td>
<td>much</td>
<td>dcv</td>
<td>deceive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(be)s</td>
<td>beside</td>
<td>s(ch)</td>
<td>such</td>
<td>dcvg</td>
<td>deceiving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(be)t</td>
<td>between</td>
<td>td</td>
<td>today or to-day</td>
<td>p(er)cv</td>
<td>perceive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(be)y</td>
<td>beyond</td>
<td>tn</td>
<td>tonight or</td>
<td>p(er)cvg</td>
<td>perceiving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*bl</td>
<td>blind</td>
<td>to-night</td>
<td>rcv</td>
<td>receive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brl</td>
<td>braille</td>
<td>tm</td>
<td>tomorrow or</td>
<td>rcvg</td>
<td>receiving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ch)n</td>
<td>children</td>
<td>to-morrow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f(st)</td>
<td>first</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The short-form words learned to this point have been used only as whole words, but, with a few exceptions, short forms can be used as both whole words and parts of words.

11.2 As Whole Words [XVI.47]

Use short-form words to represent all the meanings of a word. Thus, use the short form for quick in expressions like a quick recovery, the quick and the dead, and hurt to the quick. The short form for must is used in he must go, the must of the grape, and the closet smelled of must.

The contractions to, into, and by should be joined to short-form words, just as they are to any other word.

The capitalization of short-form words should follow print. Example:

Please Come to Afternoon Tea at 5 O’Clock

11.3 As Part Words [XVI.47, 47.e]

Use short-form words as parts of words so long as they do not result in a misspelling or obscure recognition of the word. Examples:

besides quicken musty would've littler

As parts of words, short-form words must also maintain their original meaning, therefore:

rafter raft(er) [not] raf
mustache mu(st)a(ch)e [not] m(st)a(ch)e
shoulder (sh)(ou)ld(er) [not] (sh)d(er)
mustang mu(st)ang [not] m(st)ang
bloodletter (bleeder) bloodlett(er) [not] bloodlr

11.3a Short-form words in conflict with contractions. Do not use short-form words as parts of words if their use would violate a basic contraction rule. For example, the short form for before cannot be used in hereinbefore because in order to use the be contraction, which is part of the short form, it must be the first syllable of the word. The same restriction applies to misconceive, where the short form for conceive cannot be used because the con sign does not occur at the beginning of the word. However, where such words are divided between lines, as shown in the following examples, the short-form words are used because then the be and con signs occur at the beginning of a new line. Examples:

before hereinbefore herein-
conceive misconceive mis-
11.3b **Short-form words with a prefix.** In general, prefixes can be added to short-form words. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>necessary</th>
<th>unnecessary</th>
<th>friend</th>
<th>befriend</th>
<th>paid</th>
<th>unpaid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nec</td>
<td>unnec</td>
<td>fr</td>
<td>bef</td>
<td>pd</td>
<td>unpd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.3c **Short-form words with a suffix.** In some words, in order to add a suffix, the final e is dropped or the final y is changed to an i. When this happens to a word that has a short form in braille, the short-form word is not used—to do so would result in a misspelling. Examples:

- declare  
  
- conceive  
  
- necessary

When a word ending in an e is changed by the addition of d or r, as in received or receiver, the short-form word is used as it keeps its original meaning. To prevent doubling the e in such words, be certain that only the single letter, d or r is added—not the ed or er contraction. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>braille</th>
<th>declare</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>brl</td>
<td>dcl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When in print ing is added to words that have a short form, there may be a temptation in braille to simply add the ing contraction to the short form, but to do so may result in a misspelling. Note that there are special short forms for declare, rejoice, conceive, deceive, perceive, or receive when they end in ing. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>braille</th>
<th>rejoice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>brl</td>
<td>rjcg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.4 **In Compound Words** [XVI]

Use short-form words when the words they represent are joined with other words to form solid and hyphenated compound words. Examples:

- roundabout
- grandchildren
- inasmuch
- do-gooder
- aforesaid
- hereafter
- in-between
- do-it-yourselfer
11.5 Special Rule for after, blind, and friend as Part Words [XVI.47.f]

These three words, when used as parts of words, are governed by the same rules as all the other short-form words only if a consonant or a hyphen follows them. Examples:

- afterbirth
- blindness
- friendship

When the words after, blind or friend are followed by a vowel, the short forms cannot be used because they then take on the appearance of another word. For instance, if the short form for blind were used in blinded the result would be bled. If, however, such a word is divided between lines and the vowel falls on a new line, the short form is used.

Examples:

- blinded
- befriending
- aftereffects

11.6 Dividing Short-Form Words Between Lines [XVI.47.a]

Never divide a short form of a word between lines. A division can be made only between a short form and a syllable addition. Never spell out a word that can be represented by a short form, even though it might be possible to write a portion of such a spelled out word on one line and the remainder on the next. Such division rarely saves space and it is preferable to preserve the normal braille appearance of the word. Examples:

- imm-
- im-
- un-
- un(err)-
- dclg
- de-
- mly
- p(err)-
- cvd
- cl(ar)(ing)

11.7 In Unusual Words [XVI.47.g]

Do not use a short-form word if it would cause confusion in pronunciation or difficulty in the recognition of an unusual word. Thus, the short form for about is not used in stirabout (a porridge), nor is the short form for said used in Port Said (Sä/eed). However, words like hereabouts, thereabout, gadabout, and roustabout are not considered to be unusual words and the short forms are used.

- Note: What may be unusual to one person may be very common to another. Many of these words have simply developed a traditional braille usage that is familiar to the braille reader.
11.8 **Short-Form Words In Proper Names [XVI.47.b]**

Use short-form words to represent an *entire* word in a proper name only—never just part of a word. Examples:

- (Little), Br(ow)n (and) Co.  Jimmy Doolittle
- Cape (of) (Good) Hope  Goodye(ar) Tire (and) Ru(bb)(er) Co.
- (Quick), Nebraska  Quicksburg, Virg(in)ia
- Goodwife [or] Goody Br(ow)n  Goodman (Ed)w(ar)d
- (Little)'s Cafe  (Children)'s Press

- Notice that titles, even archaic ones like *Goodwife, Goody, and Goodman,* are considered part of the name and the same rule applies. Note also that short forms are used for whole proper names when they are followed by an apostrophe.

Within titles, common words that have short forms are contracted as usual. Proper names within titles must follow the rule above. Examples:

- *book title*    The Greats in Aviation: Lindbergh and Doolittle
  
- *book title*    Louis Braille's Story of Blindness and Braille

**Drill 29**

Braille the following words. Treat each numbered line as a new paragraph. Leave three blank cells between each word. *Divide words at the end of the line where possible.* Repeat this drill until you are comfortable with the short-form words and their variations.

1. about abouts gadabout stirabout about-face hereabout thereabout roustabout roundabout whereabouts
2. above below above-mentioned aboveboard aboveground belowground
3. according accord accordingly
4. across across-the-board
5. after afternoon after-hours hereafter rafter aftereffects afterwards aftershock aftereffects afterbirth after-shave
6. again against once-again
7. almost already also always also-ran
8. although though through thorough thought
9. altogether together togetherness

(continued)
10. because before beforehand behind become beneath hereinbefore befit befuddle between beside hereinbefore began besides begin in-between behold beyond
11. blind braille blindness braillist blinded? blinders brailled Louis Braille brailler brailewriter blindfold
12. children child childlike children's grandchildren childless
13. conceive conceiving preconceive misconceived conceivable
14. could would would've should shoulder could've shouldn't
deeve deeeving deeeved deeevingly deeever deeeves
declare declaring declared declaration declares declarer declarable
17. first first-born firstly firsthand first-class
18. friend friendly befriending friends befriended! friendship friendless befriend befriended befriends
either neither either-or
20. good goodhearted do-goober Goodwill good-by goodness goody-goody
great greats not-so-great greatest greatcoat greater Great Salt Lake
22. her herself him himself
23. your yourself yourselves do-it-yourselfer
24. them themselves thy thyself
25. it its itself it's it'd it'll
26. one oneself our ourselves my myself
27. immediate immediately immediacy immediateness
28. letter bloodletter letterhead letterman Letterman lettering
29. little belittle Little Rock littler littlest littleneck
30. much such must musty suchlike most mustache mustang inasmuch mustn't muster
31. necessary necessarily unnecessary necessaries
32. o'clock oclock
33. paid unpaid prepaid paid-in-full
34. perceive perceiving unperceivable unperceived
35. perhaps perchance
36. quick quicken quick-freeze quickie quicksand Bisquick
37. receive receiving rejoice rejoicing rejoiced receivership rejoiceful
38. said aforesaid Port Said unsaid
39. today tomorrow tonight tomorrow-night today's
11.9 Summary of Contractions Used in Proper Names

Exercise caution when using contractions in proper names. Pronunciations vary widely, and if you do not know and cannot find out the correct pronunciation of a name, it may be best not to use a contraction. For example, which is correct: Fran/cone or Fran/co/ne? Be/vers or Bev/ers? (When in doubt, spell it out!)

An effort has been made to include in the following list and the word list given in Appendix B of this manual as many proper names as possible that typify problems that may be encountered. Biographical and geographical dictionaries giving known pronunciations for thousands of proper names are available in bookstores and libraries.

In general, all of the rules that you have learned in the preceding lessons apply to the use of contractions in proper names. In the following list, names have been grouped under the rule that governs the possible contractions in them. Some of the examples used could be applied to more than one rule.

A. Same Syllable Rule [X.34.a(1)]. Use a contraction when all of the letters of the contraction fall in the same syllable. Examples:

- Wright
- Ben/tham

B. Minor Syllable Division Rule [X.34.a(2)]. Use contractions when they overlap a minor syllable division. Examples:

- Mac/e/do/nia
- Van/der/bilt

C. Prefix with Base/Root Word Rule [X.34.b(2)(3)]. Do not use a contraction when it would overlap a major syllable division between a prefix and a base or root word. Examples:

- Ben/e/dict
- Van/dyke

D. Suffix with Base/Root Word Rule [X.34.b(2)]. Do not use a contraction when it would overlap a major syllable division between a suffix and a base or root word. Examples:

- Len/in/grad
- Bun/des/tag

E. Solid (Unhyphenated) Compound Word Rule [X.34.b(4)]. Do not use a contraction when it would overlap base words that are joined to form an unhyphenated compound word. Examples:

- Charles/town
- Lime/dale
• Note: Because the name *Charlestown* is a compound word, the *st* contraction cannot be used. However, in the easily recognized shortened form, *Charleston*, the *st* contraction is used. Other examples:

```
Evan(st)on      Bo(st)on      K(ing)(st)on
```

F. Hyphenated Compound Word Rule. Although Rule XI.36.a. says that one-cell, whole-word contractions may be joined to other words by the hyphen to form genuine hyphenated compound words, it is suggested that for clarity they not be used in hyphenated proper names. (See also sections *L* and *U* below.) Examples:

```
Sue Packard-More      Sue      Packard-More
```

In the case of *Chou En-lai*, although there is no specific rule that would prevent the use of the part-word contraction for *en*, for clarity it is not used. (Chou En-lai)

G. Digraph and Trigraph Rule [X.34.b(5), XIII.42.c]. Do not use a contraction if it would disturb the pronunciation of a digraph or trigraph. Examples:

```
Boone      Fontainebleau
```

```
Trembleur
```

H. Diphthong Rule [V.25]. The letters comprising the diphthongs *ae* and *oe* should not form part of a contraction. Examples:

```
Phoenix      Goering
```

```
Roederer      Koenig
```

```
Baer      Baedeker
```

I. Adjoining Consonants Rule [X.34.b(6)]. Do not use a contraction when there is a pronounced distinction between two adjoining consonants. Examples:

```
Shanghai      Gingold
```

```
Wingate      Gasthaus
```

J. Difficulty in Pronunciation Rule [X.34.b(7)]. Do not use a contraction or short-form word if it would cause difficulty in pronunciation. Examples:

```
Wen/ces/laus      Port Sa/id
```

```
Ha/dri/an       Cas/tle/reagh
```

```
The/rese       Don/e/gal
```

```
Sur/i/name      Hor/o/witz
```

K. *gh, sh, th* in Proper Names Rule [XII.38.e]. In proper names, when the letters *gh, sh, and th* are pronounced as one sound, they are contracted. If a syllable division occurs between them, they are not contracted. Examples:

- Brig/ham  
- Chis/holm  
- Chat/ham  
- Town/shend  

L. One-Cell Whole-Word Contraction Rule [XI. 36.c]. Use these contractions for whole proper names only — and may be followed by an apostrophe and *s*. Examples:

- Julia Child  
- Sandy Childs  
- Bob Rather's house  
- Baltimore  

Because these contractions are used in hyphenated compound words, a letter indicator (to be studied in the next lesson) is necessary if part of a name could be misread as a one-cell whole-word contraction. Example:

- Ti-n-Toumma plateau  

M. One-Cell Part-Word Contraction Rule [XII.38.a, d]. The contractions for *ing* and *ble* cannot begin a name. Part-word signs that have no whole word meaning are contracted when they stand alone. Examples:

- In/ge or Inge  
- Blev/in  
- Ed  

N. Lower-Sign Whole-Word Contraction Rules [XIII.39]. It is recommended that whole-word lower-signs (*in, enough, be, his, was, were*) not be used for names because they would not be permitted when followed by an apostrophe and *s*. Examples:

- Moon Chung In  
- In's house  

O. *to, into, by* Rule [XIII.41.d]. These contractions cannot be used as proper names. Examples:

- Colonel By  
- David To  

P. *ea* and the Double Letter Contractions Rule [XIII.42, 42.c]. Use these contractions only in the middle of a name. Preference is given to other contractions over *ea* and the double letter contractions. Examples:

- Seattle  
- Sheffield  
- Easter Island  
- Minneapolis  
- Armageddon  
- Kellogg
Q.  *be, con, dis* Rule [XIII.43, 43.b]. Use these contractions as the first syllable of a name, and when following a prefix such as Mac or Mc. They are also used following an apostrophe so long as they constitute a syllable. Examples:

- O'Con/nor
- MacCon/nell
- O'Be/mis
- Beh/ling

- Bel/la
- Ber/ing Sea
- Dis/rae/li
- Be/a/trice

R.  *com* Rule [XIII.44]. When *com* is capitalized, use the contraction in a name following Mac or Mc. The letters *com* need not form a syllable. Do not use the contraction following an apostrophe. Examples:

- MacCommack
- Comp/ton
- O'Comby

- Sam McComb
- O'Comby

S.  Initial-Letter Contraction Rule [XIV.45, 45.a]. Use these contractions in names only when they retain their original pronunciation and follow all other rules for initial-letter contractions. Examples:

- Everett
- Beverly
- Dayton
- Herefordshire

- Mortimer
- Houghton
- Her/mit/o/ne
- Ma/ho/ney

- Ca/pone
- Germany
- Mo/net
- Ma/honey

T.  Final-Letter Contraction Rule [XV.46]. Use these contractions only in the middle or at the end of a name. Do not use them for a whole name. Examples:

- Lawrence
- Tennessee

- Frances
- Loch Ness

- Sally

- Jo Goodwin
- Little Bighorn

U.  Short-Form Word Rule [XVI.47.b, 47.g, 47.i]. Within proper names, short-form words are used only for whole words. Examples:

- Great Britain
- Bisquick
- El Al

- Jo Goodwin
- Little Bighorn
- Al-Furat

A letter indicator (to be studied in the next lesson) is necessary if a name could be misread as a short-form word. Examples:

- Jo Good-Friend

• Note: For readability, it is recommended that short-form words not be used in hyphenated compound proper names. Example:

- Mary Good-Friend
Reading Practice

Write the following sentences in longhand. Compare your work with the print version in Appendix A.

[The format for brailled letters of correspondence will be studied in Lesson 13.]
EXERCISE

Prepare the following exercise for submission to the instructor.

LESSON 11

1. The hearing before the subcommittee on the Goodman Bill could be characterized as "much ado about nothing."
2. According to the plans made yesterday afternoon, the union is declaring a strike tomorrow morning at ten o'clock.
3. He perceived that this project would entail the expenditure of funds far above and beyond his means.
5. It is difficult today to conceive of the fears that beset the sailors of Columbus as they sailed across the unknown ocean.
6. "Love vaunteth not itself, is not puffed up, doth not behave itself unseemly, seeketh not its own, is not provoked, taketh not account of evil; rejoiceth not in unrighteousness, but rejoiceth with the truth."
7. Braille was not officially adopted as a system of reading and writing for the blind until after the death of Louis Braille, its inventor.
8. "There is a vanity which is done upon the earth; that there be just men, unto whom it happeneth according to the work of the wicked; again, there be wicked men, to whom it happeneth according to the work of the righteous; I said that this also is vanity."
9. Although Representative Doolittle voted against the measure, he said afterwards that he would support it if it became law.
10. It is almost impossible to get an interview with Mr. Truegood since he is almost always out of town.
11. The Pirates were already behind by three runs when Bob Friend came to the mound.
12. He was altogether beside himself with rage when he first discovered that he had been deceived by his friend.
13. He felt it below his station to work in the receiving room.
14. Conceiving of a plan to defraud the bank is easy enough; deceiving the boss isn't!
15. Because of other business, I was unable to give your letter my immediate attention.
16. Either this bill must be paid within the next week or our attorneys will receive instructions to prepare the necessary papers for suit.
17. Perhaps Sally regrets the fact that she married beneath herself.
18. Neither of us should deceive himself into thinking that we can do this by ourselves.
19. Rejoicing, she told him about her raise in pay.
20. Don't blame yourself too much; we're in this thing together.
21. “Get yourselves to bed, and be quick about it, before I lose my patience altogether,” she reprimanded the unruly children.
22. Those who put themselves above the law are only deceiving themselves.

23. I am knitting a sweater for myself and hope to finish it tonight.

24. When one declares oneself an expert in such a field, he should be prepared to answer many questions.

25. Hereafter I expect you to be open and aboveboard with me.

26. Police are seeking all over Hereafter Hollow for the whereabouts of the man who acted as go-between for the kidnappers.

27. Although his appointment was not until midafternoon, he arrived beforehand and accordingly had time to compose his thoughts.

28. Of all her grandchildren she was most attached to the first-born.

29. He believed blindly in the integrity of his friends.

30. Since becoming a transcriber, she has brailed "Goodbye, Mr. Chips" and a number of textbooks besides.

31. As a man of letters, his greatness has been highly overrated.

32. "Children! We will read a story about a little girl whose name was Little Goody Two Shoes, immediately after lunch," the teacher said.

33. It will be unnecessary for you to call for the package, as it will be sent to you postage prepaid.

34. Inasmuch as he is depending upon us for a complete report, we mustn't overlook even the littlest detail.

35. We really shouldn't expect him to act quickly on a matter of such great importance.

36. Those words would've been better left unsaid.

37. Perceiving that further discussion would be fruitless, he hung up the receiver with a bang.

38. Mr. Jones would like to speak with you immediately after the ceremony to-night.

39. Captain Littlefield had a preconceived notion of how the campaign should be conducted and expected every soldier to shoulder his responsibilities without question.

40. The rafters shook with applause as the cowboy finally roped the mustang.

41. Perhaps the bread went uneaten because of its musty smell.

42. In the aftermath of the huge explosion that blinded several workers, many acts of unselfishness and heroism were performed.

43. The aftereffects of the earthquake that hit the city of Port Said were terrible.

44. After their early-morning chores had been completed, the roustabouts sat down to a hearty breakfast of stirabout and ham and eggs on board the good ship "Blind Pig."

45. Florence Nightingale not only nursed, but also befriended, the sick, the wounded and the dying soldiers in the Crimean War.

46. Because leeches were used in bloodletting, I think it must've taken a lot to muster up the courage to be a bloodletter.
SUMMARY OF CONTRACTION USAGE
Initial- and Final-Letter Contractions
Short-Form Words

VI. Whole-Word Contractions (Initial- and final-letter contractions)

A. Initial-letter contractions are used for whole words when they retain their original sound. They can be followed by punctuation.

Mother's, here'll

B. Final-letter contractions are never used for whole words.

VII. Part-Word Contractions (Initial- and final-letter contractions)

A. Initial-letter contractions

Can be used for part words only when they retain their original pronunciation.

thunder, spiritual

EXCEPTIONS:

Know and ought need not always retain original sound.

acknowledge, drought

One is used anytime the letters o and n are in the same syllable.

money, component

Some is used only when it forms a complete syllable in the base word.

somebody, blossomed, blossoms

Part need not retain original sound. Cannot be used if par is a prefix.

partial, partake

B. Final-letter contractions

1. Are used only in the middle or at the end of a word.

elemental, mental, mental

bless, lesson

2. Are used at the beginning of a line in a divided word.

temper-mental

3. Are not used if they overlap a major syllable division.

fruity, citizeness

SOME EXCEPTIONS:

equally, totally

lioness, baroness

4. Cannot follow an apostrophe or hyphen.

'ounds, re-ally
C. Are not used if their use would cause difficulty in pronunciation or where two adjoining consonants are pronounced separately.

- fever—fev(er) [not] f(ever)
- sword—sword [not] s(word)
- mongoose—mongoose [not] m(ong)oose

VIII. Contraction Preferences

Where a choice must be made between two alternative contractions, take the following steps. (Remember that these are general rules and that there are exceptions.)

A. Use the contraction that saves the most space.

- pranced—pr(ance)d [not] pranc(ed) whence—(wh)(ence) [not] (wh)(en)ce
- bubble—bub(ble) [not] bu(bb)le wither—(with)(er) [not] wi(the)r

B. Use the contractions for, and, for, of, the, and with in preference to any other contraction so long as no more space is required.

- coffee—c(of)fee [not] co(ff)ee meander—me(and)(er) [not] m ea nd(er)
- theater—(the)at(er) [not] (th)(ea)t(er) effort—ef(fo)r[t] [not] e(ff)ort

C. Usually a one-cell contraction is used in preference to a two-cell contraction so long as no more space is required.

- phoned—phon(ed) [not] ph(one)d adhered—adh(er)(ed) [not] ad(her)e

EXCEPTION: The two-cell ence contraction is preferred over a one-cell contraction so long as no more space is required.

- commenced—(com)m(ence)d [not] (com)m(en)c(ed)
- fencer—f(ence)r [not] f(en)c(er)

D. Use any other contraction in preference to ea or the double letter contractions.

- peddled—p(ed)dl(ed) [not] pe(dd)l(ed) dear—de(ar) [not] d(ea)r
- really—re(ally) [not] r(ea)lly

E. Use the contraction(s) that most closely approximates correct pronunciation.

- wherever—(wh)(er)(er) [not] (where)v(er)
- noblesse—nob(less)e [not] no(ble)ss e
- recreation—recre(ation) [not] recr(ea)(tion)

F. Do not use a contraction if it would obscure the recognition of an unfamiliar or coined word—even if more cells are required.

- where'er—(wh)(er)e'(er) [not] (where)'(er)
- Mrs. Whatshername—(Wh)atsh(er)(name) [not] (Wh)at(sh)(er)(name)

G. Use the ation contraction in preference to a or ea and tion.

- delineation—del(in)e(ation) [not] del(in)(ea)(tion)
- creation—cre(ation) [not] cr(ea)(tion)
IX. Short-Form Words

A. As Whole Words. Are used to represent whole words and whole names.

I'll see little Tommy Friend at 3 o'clock this afternoon.

B. As Part Words. Are used as parts of words so long as the original meaning is retained.

aboveboard aboveboard unnecessary unnecessary
belittled belittled first-born first-born
immediately immediately goodness goodness

1. Are not used when the letters of a short-form word do not retain their usual meaning and the use of the short form would obscure the recognition of the word.

shoulder shoulder bloodletter bloodletter
mustache mustache Port Said Port Said

2. Are not used if their use would be in conflict with basic rules for contractions.

preconceive preconceive hereinbefore hereinbefore

3. Are not used in unusual words.

stirabout stirabout

4. Are never divided between braille lines, but may be separated from any added syllable.

immediately immediately unperceived unperceived
misconceive misconceive mid-afternoon mid-afternoon

5. Are not used as part of a name.

Jimmy Doolittle Jimmy Doolittle
C. Are used if they are common words in titles or headings of books, chapters, articles, songs, names of companies or organizations, etc.

   The Greatest Train Ride
   Firsthand Clothing Co.
   Childrens Press

D. The short forms for after, blind, and friend are used when followed by a consonant, but not when followed by a vowel —unless the vowel begins a line in a divided word.

   aftermath  aftereffect  after-  effect  
   blindness  blinding  blind-
   friendly  befriended  befriend-
Lesson 12
Letter Indicator, Speech/Number Combinations,
Speech Mannerisms: Stammering, Speech Hesitation or Elongation, Sound Imitations, Lisped Words, Dialect Syllabicated and Spelled Out Words

Transcriber's Notes
Note: In this and future lessons there will necessarily be references to rules in Braille Formats: Principles of Print to Braille Transcription on subjects not addressed in EBAE. While studying Braille Formats you may encounter inconsistencies between rules in the two books. These inconsistencies are under study by BANA technical committees. Unless otherwise stated, when in doubt follow the rules as set forth in EBAE and this manual when preparing lessons or a certification manuscript.

12.1 Letter Indicator [II.12]
The letter indicator (dots 56) is another composition sign like the capital and the number indicators. It is used to indicate that a letter or letter grouping has a letter meaning, and is not a whole-word contraction or a short-form word. Thus, the letter d standing alone has the whole word meaning do, but if a letter indicator precedes it, it is read as the letter d. The letter indicator is also used to differentiate between letters and numbers and with roman numerals (to be studied in Lesson 14).

12.1a Letters that mean letters. Place a letter indicator immediately before a single letter that stands alone and is not followed by a period indicating an abbreviation. If the letter is capitalized, place the letter indicator before the capital indicator. Examples:

Make an x. X marks the spot.

12.1b Letters that mean words. Place a letter indicator before the letters a, i, and o when they stand for letters, even though these letters have no contracted meaning. Do not use the letter indicator before the words a, I, and O. Examples:

Say the vowels, a, e, i, o, u.

I hear a child singing "O come, all ye faithful—"

12.1c Contractions with single letters. [diff.] Use the contractions for to, into, and by before a single letter. Example:

A is to B as C is to D.
12.1d Punctuation with single letters

12.1d(1) Letters with a hyphen. Use a letter indicator before any single letter that means a letter when it is joined to a word by a hyphen so that it won't be misread as a one-cell, whole-word contraction. When a hyphen or a dash joins letters of the alphabet, a letter indicator precedes each letter. Examples:

- Triple-A
- E-mail
- The letters a-j
- Seats M—S saved

12.1d(2) Letters with an apostrophe. Use a letter indicator before a letter that stands for a letter when it is followed by an apostrophe and s.

- Grandpa uses w's for v's.

Do not use a letter indicator before a letter that is preceded and/or followed by an apostrophe when the apostrophe indicates a missing letter in a word. Examples:

- 'E went t' other way.
- Aaron plays rock 'n' roll.

12.1d(3) Letters with a slash. Do not use a letter indicator before single letters that are in contact with a slash and other letters. Examples:

- c/o
- Mr/s

If letters follow a number and a slash, a letter indicator is required because the slash does not terminate the effect of the number indicator. Example:

- 100/d
- 24/DPS

Do use a letter indicator before any letter grouping in contact with a slash that could be misread as a short-form word. Example:

- Alt/med stands for alternative medicine.
12.1e **Letters that represent unknown quantities and shapes.** When a single letter, or a letter with a suffix, indicates an unknown quantity or the shape of something, a letter indicator clarifies the meaning. Example:

As the geese Ved across the sky, a group of Gen-Xers watched the children go Sing across the ice for the nth time.

- The bold typeface used for print letters that represent shapes is ignored in braille. Other types of emphasis will be studied in Lesson 15.

12.1f **Single-letter abbreviations.** Place a letter indicator before a single-letter abbreviation that is not followed by punctuation so that it will not be mistaken for a whole-word contraction. Example:

E Coli can be deadly.

The professor is at the U today.

- Abbreviations followed by punctuation and personal initials will be studied in Lesson 13.

12.1g **Enclosed letters**

12.1g(1) **In regular text.** If a single letter or letter grouping is enclosed in quotation marks, parentheses, brackets, or is printed in italics (to be studied in Lesson 15) — and such enclosures or typeface changes have no other purpose than to distinguish the letter or letters — in braille, the letter indicator is used to keep it from being read as a whole-word contraction or a short-form word, and the enclosing punctuation marks and typeface changes are ignored. Examples:

county highway "PD"

put your (x) here

12.1g(2) **In outlines and lists.** Unlike enclosed letters in regular text, the letter indicator is not required when the letter in, or referring to, an outline or listing is followed by, or enclosed within punctuation marks—whether items are listed vertically or horizontally. If, however, such letters are not in contact with punctuation, a letter indicator is required. Examples:
A. Thomas Edison

1. youth
   a) birth
   b) siblings

2. education

Refer to item [d] in the list.

Refer to item d in the list.

The court decided: a. Hays was guilty; b. it was a felony; c. a ten-year sentence.

Q: How long is the sentence, Mr. Hays?
A: Too long!

DIVIDING WORDS

From this point forward, the student is not required to divide words between braille lines in drills or exercises, or on the certification manuscript. (When room permits, however, hyphenated compound words or hyphenated numerical expressions, i.e., 1980-1990, may be divided following the hyphen. Long, spelled-out words or words broken into syllables may be divided at syllable breaks.) Most braille is produced on computers, and braille computer programs do not divide words. It is important, however, that transcribers know how to divide words properly. After completion of this course, when an assignment requires words to be divided or a great deal of needed space can be saved, words may be divided between lines. When dividing words, remember to use proper syllabication and contraction usage as taught in previous and future lessons, and do not divide words between pages.
Drill 30

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. Little Timmy usually remembers to dot an i, but forgets to cross his t's.
2. The person failed the test because s/he made too many errors.
3. Walt Whitman wrote "O Captain, My Captain!"
4. In the word "siege," I can never remember which comes first, the "i" or the "e."
5. D Day, June 6, 1944, was the day set for the landing of Allied forces on the
   Normandy beaches.
7. His duties are: (a) to process the mail; (b) to answer the phone; (c) to receive
   visitors; and (d) to take dictation.
8. Section 4(d) of the outline should be greatly condensed.
9. "Peg o' My Heart, I love you."
10. Jason Sed down the ski hill.
11. Line AB is parallel to CD and intersects EF at O.

12.2 Distinguishing Names and Other Words from Short-Form Words
   [II.12.a(3)]

Use a letter indicator before names, such as Al and Ab, and words that have the same
spelling as short-form words when they fall at the beginning of a sentence, quotation, or
line of poetry, or in fully capitalized text. A letter indicator is also used for letter
groupings, such as vocal expressions, plurals of letters, and abbreviations, when they
could be confused with short-form words or contractions. Examples:

Al said to his sister, "Ag, can I borrow your CD-ROM?"
  [AI sd ths s i; ]  [AI bor- yr  CDROM]

TUESDAY: THE SMITH AND IMM FAMILIES' REUNION
  [TUESD  SMI IMM  FAMILIES  REUNION]

"Hm, him I could do without," she mused.
  [Hm him i cd d wht]  me mused

NOTE: XS MARK STOPPING POINTS
  [NOTE X-S MARK STOPPING POINTS]
It should be kept in mind that the purpose of the letter indicator is to avoid confusion of letters or letter combinations with numbers, contractions, or short-form words. **If the context is perfectly clear and no such confusion is possible, do not use a letter indicator.** Examples:

A UFO was spotted off the coast.

```
A UFO was spotted off the coast.
```

The book is written by Mead et al.

```
The book is written by Mead et al.
```

I live on county road KK.

```
I live on county road KK.
```

Please take Uncle Al home now.

```
Please take Uncle Al home now.
```

SD and JY connect at W.

```
SD and JY connect at W.
```

When deciding whether or not something is clear in context, remember that what might seem clear to a sighted reader is not always obvious to the braille reader because the braille reader cannot see the surrounding text. In the sentence "**TN is the postal abbreviation for Tennessee.**" a letter indicator before the TN quickly identifies the letters as an abbreviation and not the short-form for *tonight*. However, it would not be necessary to use the letter indicator before *TN* in a list of Tennessee addresses. Other examples:

We have a fine PD.

```
We have a fine PD.
```

Some police departments aren't so good, but we have a fine PD.

```
Some police departments aren't so good, but we have a fine PD.
```

John is in ag school.

```
John is in ag school.
```

John is interested in animal husbandry and will be going to ag school.

```
John is interested in animal husbandry and will be going to ag school.
```
12.3 Letter/Number Combinations [II.12.a(1)]

12.3a Plural numbers. Use a letter indicator before the s in plural numbers printed without an apostrophe. Example:

1890s 1890’s [The effect of the number indicator is terminated by the apostrophe.]

12.3b Numbers followed by letters. Remember that neither the hyphen nor the slash terminates the effect of the number indicator. To alert the reader that numbers have stopped and letters have begun, use a letter indicator before a letter, or a letter grouping, that immediately follows a number or a number and a hyphen or a slash. Contractions are not used in random combinations of numbers and letters. Examples:

3-c 3-C
3/c 3c
46T 78stp
46-TH 78-stp
7/A 7/7/pp

Note: An exception to this rule occurs with ordinal numbers and numbers that are treated as nouns and verbs where the number is immediately followed by letters or a part-word contraction, as in 2nd and 4th. Because context makes the meaning clear, a letter indicator is not used in these instances. (See 5.5 and 6.1g)

Remember that a period does terminate the effect of the number indicator. Thus, when a letter immediately follows a number and a period, do not use a letter indicator. Example:

30.a.-f.

12.3c Numbers followed by words. When a number and a word are joined by a hyphen, as in 6-pack or 7-Up, a letter indicator is not required unless all of the letters of the word could be misread as a number. Examples:

a 300-cab operation
a figure 8-like track
we made a 6-friend pact
a 12-can case
a 40-acre park

Note that the contraction for can was not used in 12-can case because (without a letter indicator) is read 12-3; (with a letter indicator) is read 12-c.
12.3d **Letters followed by numbers.** When a single letter is followed immediately by a number, or a slash and a number, a letter indicator is not required. However, a single letter followed by a hyphen and a number needs a letter indicator so that the letter will not be misread as a whole-word contraction. (Remember that whole-word contractions are not used next to a slash, but they are used in hyphenated-compound words.)

Examples:

T19  T/19  T-19  T-19

- Note: See Lesson 14 for letters followed by roman numerals.

When a letter grouping is followed by a number, or a hyphen and a number, use a letter indicator only if such letters could be mistaken for a number or a short-form word.

Examples:

RCV90  Ir-14  lr-14  lr-14
TX48  gyv-72  gyv-72  gyv-72
ES-18  W-2GS  W-2GS  W-2GS
17C4-6  C22A  C22A  C22A

[Reference citations, such as II.12.a(4), that include numbers and letters separated by periods and decimal points will be studied in Lesson 17.]

12.4 **Summary**

The rules governing the use of the letter indicator may be summarized as follows:

**Use the Letter Indicator**

1. With all single letters that mean letters, not words. [Class B]
2. With single letters followed by 's. [p's and q's]
3. Before s in plural numbers. [1800s]
4. With letters that represent shapes. [a Ved formation]
5. With single letters joined to words by a hyphen or dash. [x-ray]
6. With single letters joined to other single letters by a hyphen or dash. [a-j A-J]
7. With single enclosed letters in regular text (drop enclosure symbols). [(a) "b"]
8. With unpunctuated letters in outlines and lists.
9. With names, words, or letter groupings that could be mistaken for short-form words.
10. With letters that follow a number and a slash. [35/B]
11. With any single letter connected to a number by a hyphen. [c-4 4-C]
12. With a letter or letter grouping immediately following a number, or following a number and a hyphen. [6MG 6-mg]
13. With letter groupings joined to a number by a hyphen that could be mistaken for a short-form word. [Fr-10 6-ab]
14. With single-letter abbreviations or initials that are not followed by a period or colon.
15. With lowercase roman numerals and foreign ordinal numbers (to be studied later).
Do Not Use the Letter Indicator

1. With the words a, I, and O.
2. With letters that are followed or preceded by an apostrophe, hyphen, or dash indicating omitted letters. [Fish 'n' Chips d--n]
3. With letters in contact with a slash and other letters. [s/he]
4. With letters designating topics in outlines or listings if they are followed by or enclosed in punctuation.
5. With letter groupings that could not be mistaken for a short-form word. [XYZ]
6. With words, names, or letter groupings that correspond to short-form words, but, because of context, could not be mistaken for one.
7. With a contraction that immediately follows a number, as in ordinal numbers. [1st 4th]
8. With any letter that is immediately followed by a number, or a slash and a number. [M6]
9. With letter groupings followed immediately by a number, or by a hyphen and a number, that will not be confused with a short-form word. [TY60 ty-60]
10. With words following a number and a hyphen, unless all of the letters of the word could be misread as a number. [6-pack]
11. In numbers followed by a lettered suffix. [911ed]
12. In stammered words. [b-b-boy]
13. With initials and abbreviations followed by periods or a slash (to be studied later).
14. With italicized single-letter foreign words (to be studied in Lesson 16.)

Drill 31

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. I am also sending a copy of this letter to Ab.
2. Al is a popular guy.
3. A meeting will be held on the 15th for the purpose of organizing a new 4-H Club.
4. You will find sections 216b and 216c of the law extremely ambiguous.
5. Next semester Whitney hopes to be promoted to Grade 6A.
6. The diameter of a circle is equal to 2r.
7. During the Cold War U-2 planes were shot down deep inside Soviet territory.
8. She is taking a series of vitamin b12 shots.
9. The medical examination showed that he was in A1 condition.
10. I save money by buying V-8 juice in either a 6-can case or a 4-case lot.
11. We read about Haroun-al-Raschid in the Arabian Nights Tales.
12. In the 1980s women joined the work force in large numbers.
12.5 Speech Mannerisms [II.13]

In the preceding section you learned that when a letter is joined to a word by a hyphen, the letter indicator should precede the letter. In speech mannerisms such as stammering, speech hesitation, and vocal sounds, where letters are separated by hyphens but they are actually part of the word itself, the letter indicator is not used.

12.5a Stammering. When brailling stammered words, the letter or contraction preceding and following the hyphen must be identical. Therefore, contractions cannot always be used. Examples:

m-m-m-mine  s-s-say

g-ghost  wh-which

f-f-father  wh-where

b-by th-the way

EXCEPTION: When a word that can be represented by a one-cell whole-word contraction is stammered, such as c-c-can or d-d-do, the contraction is not used even though the letters are the same before and after the hyphen (c-c-can  d-d-do). The use of the contractions would render the words in braille as can-can-can and do-do-do.

To, into, and by should be contracted and joined to a stammered word. Examples:

into th-these  to d-do  by th-the way

Short-form words may be used in stammered words only if the short-form begins with the same letter or contraction as the stammered portion. Examples:

g-(good)  (ch)-(ch)-(children)  q-q-(quick)
m-(myself)  d-d-(deceive)  qu-quick
c-conceive  (th)-(th)emselves  b-b-betwe(en)

When it is necessary to divide a stammered word between lines, the stammered portion should not be separated from the rest of the word. However, such words may be divided after any syllable in the unstammered portion. Examples:

b-before  [not]  [not]

s-s-s sometime  [not]  [not]

d-d-d-do  [cannot divide]
th-th-think  [cannot divide]
12.5b  **Speech hesitation or elongation, sound imitations, lisped words, dialect.** In order to promote reading ease, it is suggested that words representing these speech mannerisms not be divided between braille lines.

12.5b(1)  **Speech hesitation, elongation, and sound imitations.** Follow print when hyphens, apostrophes, and dashes are used to indicate speech hesitation. It is suggested that one-cell whole-word contractions not be used. Other contractions should be used only if they do not interfere with readability or pronunciation. Examples:

- we-e-ellll
- t(wh)(ing)gg  
  *[sound of an arrow]*
- mmm-more
- pfft
- so-o-o-o
- h'm  
  *[hm]*
- aa(ar)rrgg(gh)*h!!

When the letters *hm* are used in print to represent a vocal sound, see 12.2.

12.5b(2)  **Lisped words.** A lisped word is one in which the *th* sound is substituted for an *s* or *z* sound. When brailling lisped words, the *th* contraction is always used to represent the lisped sound. Example:

- Don't keep your thither in thuthpenthe.

12.5b(3)  **Dialect.** Dialect, sometimes known as "speaking with an accent," is the speech of a geographic region or a social class. The spelling of words reflects phonetic pronunciation. In general, contractions and short-form words are used rather liberally in dialect. It is suggested that these words not be divided between lines. [See also 16.6a] Examples:

- (could)a  
  *[could have]*
- (wh)(er) [where]
- (d(in)t) [didn't]
- (fay)the)r [father]
- (must)a [must have]

- me(bb)e  
  *[maybe]*
- (some)rs [somewhere]
- (st)tract(ed) [distracted]
- (dis)truc(tion) [destruction]
- (good)un [good one]

- (th)' [the]
- y'(ou)'re  
  *[you're]*
- (their)selves
- b(of)e  
  *[both]*
- f(er)  
  *[for]*
- com'(er)e  
  *[come here]*

If, however, the use of a contraction in a word printed in dialect would obscure its meaning or pronunciation, the contraction should not be used. Example:

- lyedee  
  *[lady]*

In order to reflect dialectical pronunciation, the *th* contraction is used instead of the *the* contraction when in dialect *thee* replaces *thi*, as in *(th)e(en)g* [thing] and *(th)e(en)k* [think] — or, where *the* replaces *te* or *de*, as in *mat(th)(er)* [matter], *sis(th)(er)* [sister], *bat(th)(er)y* [battery], and *mur(th)(er)* [murder]. This rule applies whether the word is written as a whole or elongated as in *the-e-enk*.

When in dialect *you're* is written *your*, do not use the short-form word because it does not retain its original meaning.

For some other restrictions on the use of contractions in dialect, see 9.1a, 10.1e, and 16.6a.
12.6 Syllabicated Words [II.13]

12.6a Words divided into syllables. In syllabicated words the hyphen always occurs at the end of a syllable; therefore they may be divided between lines after any hyphen.

12.6a(1) Words divided into syllables for dramatic effect. In order to prevent misunderstanding, contraction usage is restricted in syllabicated words. The only contractions that can be used when brailling a word that has been divided into syllables for dramatic effect are:

- *and, for, of, the, with*. Examples: (for)-ti-tude  b(and)-age
- one-cell, part-word contractions including *in* and *en*. Examples: (en)-li(st) m(in)-is-t(er)
- one-syllable initial-letter contractions. Examples: (day)-(time)  (right)-i(st)
- one-syllable, short-form words. Examples: (great)-(er)  (quick)-ly

The following contractions cannot be used if they constitute the entire isolated syllable:

- one-cell, whole-word contractions. Examples: can-did  so-da  (ch)ild-i(sh)
- one-cell, lower sign contractions (except the part words *en* and *in*). Examples: con-tract  was-sail  be-have  mo(th)-(er)-in-law
- one syllable, final-letter contractions. Examples: (for)(th)-(right)-ness  com-m(en)t  bal-ance  (in)-di-g( ence)  b(less)-(ed)  less-(en)

Examples:

"I'll be to-ing and fro-ing," she chirped, "from your office to mine."

I heard ev-er-y sin-gle word!

12.6a(2) Spelling words and words under study. No contractions are used in spelling words or in words that are being analyzed or that have been broken into parts in order to focus upon spelling, pronunciation, or word construction. Example:

"Can you spell 'stren-u-ous,' Al?"
12.6b **Spelled-Out Words.** When the letters of a spelled-out word are separated from each other by hyphens, black dots, stars, or spaces, in braille a hyphen is placed between the letters and, when necessary, a transcriber's note (see 12.7 below) is inserted to explain that the hyphens do not exist in print. Each upper case letter is capitalized individually and letter indicators are not used. Examples:

```
N O W!          M A S H
S T O P
```

Divide spelled-out words only at the end of a syllable. Do not divide a beginning or ending single-letter syllable from the rest of the word. Example:

```
A-r-a-b-i-a    A-r-a    A-r-a-b-i-a
(A/ra/bi/a)  b-i-a  r-a-b-i-a  a
```

12.7 **Transcriber's Notes [II.11.b]**

Occasionally it is not possible to transcribe material into braille exactly as it appears in print. When this happens, the transcriber writes a note to explain the change from print format or to convey information necessary for the clear understanding of the material. This transcriber's note (TN) may be added to a braille transcription either at the beginning of a volume on a "Transcriber's Notes page" or imbedded in the text.

When a situation that needs explanation occurs only once, or very seldom, the transcriber's note is imbedded at the appropriate site in the text. Each complete note, regardless of the number of paragraphs it may contain, is preceded and followed, unspaced, by the 2-cell composition sign called a transcriber's note symbol (dots 6, 3).

Use paragraph format. Each note starts in cell 7 with runover lines starting in cell 5. Do not leave a blank line either before or after a TN unless required by other braille formats. [BF Rule 1.7]

A transcriber's note symbol is listed on a special symbols page only when a termination indicator (which has the same configuration, and will be studied in Lesson 15) is also used in the same volume.

If an unfamiliar abbreviation, special symbol, or a special format needs explanation, stop the transcription immediately before the occurrence and insert a transcriber's note. Example:

```
DE PURE IT IS LIKE FO ...
```

Take note that the whole-word lower-sign contraction for "in" is used next to the transcriber's note symbol. This is because the TN symbol is a composition sign, like the capital indicator. (See 7.2a)
If a term or print sign needs identification or description, place the TN immediately following it. Example:

In the following music a caesura // is used to indicate a breathing point.

--- FOLLOW MUSICA CAESURA ---
--- BRIEFS CAESURA IS
REPRESENTED DOTS UCF, UCF ---
--- USE TO INDICATE A BRILLS POINT---

When a special situation that needs explanation occurs more than once within a particular section of a text, only one transcriber's note is required.

When it is necessary to explain that the braille version differs from the print in a fundamental way throughout an entire book this notice is placed on a transcriber's notes page at the beginning of the braille volume (to be studied in Lesson 19).

Drill 32

Practice brailling the following sentences. Note: do not use transcriber's notes in the drills and exercises in this instruction manual.

1. "K-k-k-katie, beautiful lady, you're the only g-g-girl that I adore."
2. "Br-r! It's c-cold! D-d-do you th-think it'll b-b-be warmer t-t-t-tomorrow?" he asked, shivering.
3. "Wh-where did th-that ch-child d-disappear to n-now?" exclaimed the excited mother.
4. "S-s-stop! P-please, let's g-go in," Crystal chattered. "I c-c-can't e-e-conceive of an-ything else as c-c-c-old as the wa-water in th-th-this l-lake."
5. "We-e-e-el," the indecisive young captain wavered, "if the storm doesn't soon abate, we may have to send out an SOS."
6. "If you'll be m-i-e mine, I'll be th-i-i-thine, and I'll l-o-v-e love you all the t-i-m-e time."
7. "Come on now! All together! Make it loud! Spell it and yell it! Let's go! CENTRAL!" urged the cheerleader.
8. "I lotht my ten thenth, Thuthie," sobbed the little girl.
9. "Iffen I cain't keep goin' fer long, I kin allus set a spell and sip my Harm Walker Likker," said the old mountaineer.
11. "And have you consithered, O'Reilly, that the patther of little feet manes that you'll be nadin' mor-r-re bread and butter and tay on the table?"
12. The sign in the barracks read: A·T·T·E·N·T·I·O·N! LIGHTS OUT AT 2300.
13. Oh, what a beau-ti-ful morning!

12 - 14       TOC -- INDEX
EXERCISE
Prepare the following exercise for submission to the instructor. As in previous lessons, the running head, LESSON 12, should appear on the first line of every page of the exercise. On the first page only, center the title of the story SCHOOL DAY on the third line. Leave a blank line between the title and the beginning of the text. Do not leave blank lines between paragraphs.
Remember to number your pages, and do not divide words between lines.
Reminder: When room permits, hyphenated-compound words may be divided between lines, but only following the hyphen. Whether to divide spelled-out words or not is left to the transcriber's discretion. If a great deal of space would be left on a line, or if space is at a premium, spelled-out words may be divided at a syllable break.

SCHOOL DAY

It never would have happened to me if Miss Nellie Peabody, the pretty schoolmarm of Possum Hollow, hadn't suddenly eloped with Everett Stamp, the mail carrier for Route 3. This created a crisis in the Possum Hollow School, and in a weak moment I agreed to step into the breach and teach the entire school — all the way from kindergarten to grade a8.

My troubles began early. The children were all seated when Terence O'Shaughnessy came running through the door. I asked why he was late, and he answered in his broadest Irish brogue, "The battr-y in me fayther's car was dead." I explained to Terence that the word is pronounced bat-ter-y, not bat-th-y. But he, not the least bit convinced, glared at me as he took his seat, and snarled, "Divil a bit! That's the way me fayther says it, and me fayther is always right."

I then proceeded with the calling of the roll. I had progressed from the A's through the M's when I became conscious of the fact that the back of the room was enveloped in clouds of smoke. I was frantically looking about to locate the safest exit through which to herd my charges when I discovered the source of the smoke. A huge hulk of a boy, about six feet, two inches tall, clad in blue overalls and a multi-colored T-shirt and wearing colossal brogans that looked to be at least size 12d, was slouching in his seat in the back row calmly smoking a corncob pipe.

"What do you mean by smoking in school?" I demanded.

"We-e-e-ell, I reckon a m-m-man kin have his m-m-mornin' pipe," he drawled. "'Y' know the m-m-mailman run off with the t-t-teacher, and my pa made me g-g-go clear into t-town and g-g-git the m-mornin’ paper so’s he c-c-could read the g-g-gossip. So th-thar w-warn’t t-t-time for my m-mornin’ p-p-pipe."

"Well, you just put that foul-smelling thing out and do without your smoke for one morning," I snapped.

"Okay," he assented sullenly. "Some p-p-people t-treat you like a ch-child. I bin s-smokin’ my p-p-pipe since I was th-thirteen. Some f-folks oughta l-look out for th-theirselves ’stead a b-bossin’ others ’round."

After the smoke had cleared away I returned to my pedagogic duties, reading to the kindergarten contingent. Even these little tykes seemed determined to test my patience to the utmost. Whenever little Luigi recited the alphabet he insisted on stopping at q. When I asked (continued)
him why he did this, he replied, “But teachair, Q is for quit — I the-e-enk,” and the class roared with laughter. When we came to arithmetic I asked 1st-grade Judy how much 7 and 7 make, and she replied sweetly, “Theventy-theven, Mith Olthen,” and again the school rocked with laughter at my expense.

During that whole long day there was one fleeting moment of satisfaction. This happened during the 4th-grade spelling lesson. It became painfully apparent that the children were all having difficulty with words that contained both the letters "e" and "i." Finally, Al asked in desperation, “But how can we tell which comes first, Miss Olsen?”

“Al,” I replied, “one thing that will help is to remember this little verse: ‘When the letter c you spy, place the e before the i.’” After that, Al and the rest of the class as well had much less trouble.

About this time, noticing that the children were becoming restless, I announced we’d have a real spelldown — choosing up sides and everything. We started with easy words, and for a while things proceeded smoothly and without notable incident. But then it was Jimmy’s turn, and I gave him the word “frog.” “F-r—” began Jimmy. He hesitated and started over again.

“F-r—f-r—” Jimmy appeared to be completely at sea. Just then I detected Tom reaching over and jabbing Jimmy with a pin, and Jimmy finished in a blaze of glory, “—o-g!” I ignored the prompting and went on.

Finally the field was narrowed down to just two survivors; Dorothy Stamp, a bespectacled, pony-tailed intellectual colossus, and little Percy Littlejohn, a precocious brat who always read with expression. (I could envision the day when Percy would be the announcer on the Possum Hollow radio station and would dramatically proclaim the virtues of K-9 dog toys and 2-dog leashes to an enthralled public.)

“Your word is sat-is-fies, Percy,” I said.

Percy spelled it with confidence: “S-a-t-i-s-f-y-s.”

“How do you spell it, Dorothy?” I asked.

"Hm, let's see," she said, and then triumphantly spelled it correctly: “S-a-t-i-s-f-i-e-s.”

As I presented Dorothy with a new 3r game as the prize for being the A1 speller of the school, little Percy’s small world of conceit came tumbling down amid anguished howls and copious tears, and my little world of peace and tranquility came tumbling with it.

At last that long day came to a close, and with it my country schoolteacher career was ended. As I stepped out into the bitter cold of that January 1935 afternoon my lips said “Br-r-r-r-r,” but my heart uttered a fervent “Thank God!” I was an older and wiser woman. I had learned three never-to-be-forgotten facts: (a) kids say and do the darnedest things, (b) patience is a virtue well worth cultivating, (c) a schoolteacher's life is anything but a bed of roses.
Lesson 13

Symbols, Abbreviations, Personal Initials, Initialisms and Acronyms, Slash, Ditto Sign, Telephone Numbers, Postal Codes, Dates, Format for Letters (correspondence)

13.1 Symbols for Coinage, Weight, Measure, and Other Special Symbols [VIII.31]

When in print a number, letter, or word is preceded or followed by an abbreviation and/or a symbol, in braille follow the print order, spelling, capitalization, punctuation, and spacing. (See 13.2b for spacing of abbreviations.)

Some print symbols are brailled as letter abbreviations while others have distinctive configurations.

13.1a Print symbols brailled as letter abbreviations. The following print symbols are represented in braille by letters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Print Symbol</th>
<th>Braille Equivalent</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>°</td>
<td>₋ ₋</td>
<td>degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¶</td>
<td>₋ ₋</td>
<td>paragraph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'</td>
<td>₋ ₋</td>
<td>foot, feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>′</td>
<td>₋ ₋</td>
<td>minute(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>″</td>
<td>₋ ₋</td>
<td>second(s)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When a print symbol that is represented in braille by a letter abbreviation immediately follows a number or letter, a letter indicator is inserted before the abbreviation.

Examples:

If the engine heats at $34^\circ$ per min., after 1 hour it will reach $X^\circ$. (Answer in ¶3.)

He is nearly 7' tall, and runs the mile in 4'10".
### 13.1b Print symbols that have distinctive braille equivalents.

Use these equivalents and follow print order whenever the following print symbols are encountered. List symbols not commonly used on the Special Symbols page (to be studied in Lesson 19).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Print Symbol</th>
<th>Braille</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Print Symbol</th>
<th>Braille</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$</td>
<td>⠼⠃</td>
<td>dollar(s)</td>
<td>&amp;</td>
<td>⠼⠙</td>
<td>ampersand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>£</td>
<td>⠼⠂</td>
<td>pound(s)</td>
<td>@</td>
<td>⠼⠑</td>
<td>at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§</td>
<td>⠼⠈</td>
<td>section</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>⠼⠐</td>
<td>crosshatch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¢</td>
<td>⠼⠕</td>
<td>cent(s)</td>
<td>©</td>
<td>⠼⠌</td>
<td>copyright</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>⠼⠊</td>
<td>percent</td>
<td>™</td>
<td>⠼⠖</td>
<td>trademark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>⠼⠝</td>
<td>inch(es)</td>
<td>®</td>
<td>⠼⠝</td>
<td>registered trademark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¥</td>
<td>⠼⠏</td>
<td>yen</td>
<td>€</td>
<td>⠼⠝</td>
<td>euro</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

- $36  £25  §3  16¢
- 5%  6"  21¥  TC&R

**Melons @ $1 each**

**10# of apples**

**Apt. #6**

**Press the # key.**

**© Copyright 2008**

**SX-14™ QUAKER®**

**€16**
The symbols used for inches, feet, and minutes and seconds of time or angular measure (""") are often referred to as *prime* and *double prime* marks.

13.1c **Symbols in contact with composition signs** Symbols terminate the effect of the double capital indicator and the emphasis indicator (to be studied in Lesson 15). Example:

```
UW@M
```

13.1d **Symbols in contact with contractions.** The contractions *to*, *into*, and *by* are used before symbols. Example:

```
$10 to $15
```

13.1e **Print symbol indicator for symbols standing alone.** When in print the symbols for the dollar, pound, or section stand alone or are in conjunction with a word or abbreviation, in braille the *print symbol indicator* (dot 4) is inserted before the braille equivalent of the symbol. List the print symbol indicator on the Special Symbols page (to be studied in Lesson 19). Example:

```
The US$ and the £ fell sharply today.
```

When writing symbols for degrees and dollars, the ° immediately follows the number (3°) while the $ immediately precedes the number ($5).

```
:5 writ+ symbols = degrees &
doll+>1 ! @dg immly foll\s ! numb\] 74#e74
```

13.1f **Dividing between lines.** Do not separate a symbol from the word, letter, or number to which it pertains. Numbers, symbols, and/or abbreviations that constitute a unit, such as 6' 2" or 27°35'S, should not be divided between lines.

13.1g **Sterling coinage.** Sterling coinage is brailled as it appears in print and follows print spacing. Examples:

```
£6 8s 10d 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f
2s 2d 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f
£6/0/5 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f
£6-0-5 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f
```

[Remember that slashes and hyphens do not terminate the effect of the number indicator.]

```
£6 5d 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f 7\f
```

[Modern British decimal coinage will be studied in Lesson 14.]
13.1h Print symbols that have no braille equivalents. The appropriate uncapitalized word(s) should be used for print symbols that have no braille provision, such as ☺ or ☘. It is suggested that the words be enclosed in parentheses or other symbols of enclosure not otherwise used and explained in a transcriber’s note. Example:

 بصورة مستواة, وارسل اليوم! ☺

Drill 33

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. The sign read: Peaches @ $25 per bushel.
2. The basketball player weighs 187# and is 7'2" tall.
3. Tell Tom to remove item #13-B62 from the invoice.
4. Highway 52 intersects Highway 17 at an angle of exactly 52°30'15".
5. On Tuesday, Wilford made a deposit of £493/16/8.
6. The price of the souvenir was £1 5d, but she found that she had only 18s 4d left after a day at the fair.
7. The ¥ has taken a beating this week while the $ has remained strong.
8. Pure water consists of approximately 11% hydrogen and 89% oxygen.
9. The symbol & is typed by using the shift key with the figure 7.
10. The area described in ¶9 can be found on the plat map in §46.
11. A candy bar that cost 25¢ in 1950 now costs nearly $2.
12. I paid only €70 for this coat in Spain.

13.2 Abbreviations in General [VI.27]

The short-form or abbreviated words studied in Lesson 11 are peculiar to braille. Standard abbreviations, however, are commonly used in print and are represented in braille according to specific rules.

Brailled abbreviations, like brailled symbols, should follow print capitalization, punctuation, order, and spacing except in certain circumstances that will be mentioned later. Do not use a letter indicator with a single-letter abbreviation that is followed by a period. Do not use a letter indicator with an abbreviation unless it could be confused with a word or a short-form word. Unspaced abbreviations and abbreviations that represent a unit such as sq. ft. and W. Va. should not be separated between braille lines. Examples:
a.m.  Mrs.  Dr.  viz.  Ph.D.  27 sq.ft.  5 KW  N.W.T.  ASAP  q.i.d.  

When an abbreviation is unspaced from the preceding number, insert a letter indicator before the abbreviation. Examples:

| 5mL | 2yds, 4ft | 7a.m. |

In order to make a clear distinction between a symbol that is represented in braille by letters and a letter that immediately follows it, a letter indicator is placed before the letters of the symbol and before the following letter. Example:

34°C.  

• Note: Plural abbreviations and other abbreviations that have suffixes will be studied in Lesson 15.

13.2a **Capitalization in abbreviations.** The double capital indicator is used only where two or more capital letters in an abbreviation follow one another with no intervening periods. Following a period the appropriate capital or double capital indicator is repeated. In abbreviations that contain both upper and lower case letters, it is suggested that each upper case letter be capitalized individually. Examples:

| NATO | Y.W.C.A. | LL.D. |
| MHz | USAir | B.Sc. |
| NYU-Albany |

[Although a hyphen does not terminate the effect of the double capital indicator, in a case such as this the single capital indicator tells the reader that the rest of the word is in lower case.]

As in the case of a hyphenated compound word, the double capital indicator placed before a hyphenated compound abbreviation indicates that all the letters of the abbreviation are capitals, and the capital indicator is not repeated after the hyphen. Such a compound abbreviation may be divided at the end of a line after the hyphen. Examples:

AFL-CIO  [Although a hyphen does not terminate the effect of the double capital indicator, in a case such as this the single capital indicator tells the reader that the rest of the word is in lower case.]
13.2b **Connecting words in abbreviations.** Use contractions for lowercase connecting words and suffixes that are part of abbreviations. If a capital letter or letters follows the contraction, repeat the appropriate capital or double capital indicator. Follow print spacing. Examples:

- AFofL
- AT&T
- 4-Hers [or] 4-H’ers

- Fully capitalized abbreviations followed by lower case endings, such as YMCAers, will be studied in Lesson 15.

13.2c **Contractions in abbreviations.** As a general rule contractions are used in abbreviations that represent a single word regardless of whether or not they could have been used in the complete word. Do not contract capital letters that stand for different words in abbreviations. Examples:

- St. Paul, Minn.  Little Rock, Ark.
- Prof. Smith  first ed. [edition]  Ted Mead, Ed. [editor]
- Phys. Ed. Dept.  ch. 7, pg. 3
- OFofW [Ohio Federation of Workers]

- Note: When the abbreviation for chapter (ch) is followed by a period, the ch contraction is used. The contraction cannot be used if there is no period because it would be read as *child*.

**EXCEPTIONS:**

Do not use the *in* contraction in the abbreviation for *inch (in)* or *inches (ins)*. [VIII.31.a]

Examples:

- 8 ins.  3ft, 6in  8-in. dia.

As noted earlier, the *in* contraction is used when brailling the symbol (") for *inch(es)*. Example:

- She is 5'4" tall, so shorten her dress 3ins.

13 - 6

TOC -- INDEX
Do not use contractions for two-letter postal abbreviations such as AR [Arkansas] and IN [Indiana].

Do not use the contractions for *be*, *con*, or *dis* in an abbreviation if they do not constitute the first syllable in the complete word. [XIII.43.a]

Examples: Belg. [Belgium], (Con)n. [Connecticut]

Do not use the contractions for *be*, *con*, or *dis* if they comprise the entire abbreviation.

Examples: Dis. [District], Be [beryllium], Con. [Consolidated]

Do not use a one-cell, whole-word contraction for an abbreviation.

Examples: Can [Canada], IT [Italy], do [ditto]

**13.2d Avoiding confusion between whole-word contractions or short-form words and abbreviations.** Place a letter indicator before a freestanding, single-letter abbreviation not followed by a period or any abbreviation that could be confused with a whole-word contraction or a short-form word. Examples:

```
c 1850  1850  c. 1850  1850

We are going to Memphis, TN.

CD-ROM  CD-ROM

100 volts AC  100 AC

A Fr equals 100 centimes.

When context makes the meaning of an abbreviation without a period perfectly clear (see 12.2), a letter indicator is not needed.

**13.2e Spacing in abbreviations.** In abbreviations where each capitalized letter represents a word, the entire abbreviation should be brailled on one line without spaces between the letters. Examples:

```
K. U. (Kansas University)  K. U.
U. of  K.  U. of  K.

If, however, an abbreviation contains a symbol, follow print spacing. Example:

```
V & A Museum  V & A MUSEUM
B&O Railroad  B&O RAILROAD

TOC -- INDEX  13 - 7
13.2f **Slash with single letter abbreviations.** Where context makes the meaning clear, single letter abbreviations that are separated by a slash do not require a letter indicator. These expressions should not be divided between braille lines. Examples:

- c/o Sam Jones  
- b/w TV set

In situations where a single letter could be misread, as in *(w/copy)* where the *w* is an abbreviation for *with*, not *will*, use a letter indicator for clarity.

13.2g **Enclosed abbreviations.** Unlike an enclosed letter that has a letter meaning (see 12.1g(1)), when a single-letter abbreviation is enclosed in parenthesis, quotation marks, or brackets, the punctuation is retained. A letter indicator is not required if context makes perfectly clear the meaning of a single-letter abbreviation not followed by a period. If the meaning is not clear, use a letter indicator. Examples:

- sizes: [s] [m] [l]

  Two atoms of hydrogen (H) joined to one atom of oxygen (O) yield water.

13.2h **Non-Latin letters in abbreviations.** Greek or other non-Latin letters occurring in abbreviations, as in \( \mu \text{sec} \) (microsecond), are brailled according to the braille rules for that language and preceded by a non-Latin letter indicator (to be studied in Lesson 16).

13.3 **Personal Initials** [VI.27.c]

The initials of a person's name are capitalized, punctuated, and spaced as they appear in print. Like abbreviations in general, they should not be divided between braille lines if they appear in print unspaced. In the following example, because there is no space between the *R.* and the *C.*, *R.C. Cooper* could only be divided after the *R.C.* A division could be made at any space in *Mrs. P. G. Hall*. Examples:

- R.C. Cooper  
- Mrs. P. G. Hall

  Initials that are used for an entire name, as in J.F.K., should not be divided between braille lines whether they are spaced in print or not. Examples:

- L.B.J.  
- F. D. R.
Place a letter indicator before an initial that is not followed by a period so that it will not be read as a whole-word contraction. Example:

Harry S Truman

Initials followed by a period do not require a letter indicator. Therefore, in the sentence *Ms. M. called today* a letter indicator is not needed. However, if the period is missing from the initial, a letter indicator is needed to prevent it from being read as *Ms. More*. In the sentence "*Let us call on Ms. M.*" it will not be clear to a braille reader whether the period denotes just the end of the sentence and is to be read as *Ms. More* or if it denotes an initial and is to be read as *Ms. M.* Thus, if the first time *Ms. M.* is mentioned the name occurs at the end of a sentence, use the letter indicator to clarify the situation. When it is clear that the author uses the period with *Ms. M.*, whether or not it occurs at the end of a sentence, the letter indicator may be dropped.

### 13.4 Initialisms and Acronyms [VI.27.a(2)]

Initialisms are abbreviations that consist of the first letters of several words and are pronounced as letters. In braille, contractions and letter indicators are not used in initialisms, whether they are written unspaced or separated by hyphens. Examples:

- **D-A-R** [Daughters of the American Revolution]
- **EST** [Eastern Standard Time]

An acronym is an abbreviation that uses the first letter or letters of each of the successive parts of a compound term and is pronounced as a word. Contractions are used in acronyms if all the letters of the contraction fall within a syllable of the acronym—and for clarity, it is suggested that all of the letters that comprise the contraction should come from the same word. If the meaning of an acronym cannot be determined, do not use contractions. Examples:

- **MEDICO** [Medical Insurance Company]
- **MEDICO** [Maine Development & Investing Company]
- **FORTRAN** [formula translation]
- **FORTRAN** [Federal Organization for Rural Transport]
- **CINC** [Commander in Chief]
- **SEATO** [Southeast Asia Treaty Organization]
- **WHO** [World Health Organization]
- **NOW** [National Organization for Women]
13.5 Ditto Sign [VIII.31.e]

The print ditto sign is represented in braille by the dots 5, 2 (⠗⠗)—a two-cell symbol. Always leave a space before and after a braille ditto sign. When multiple ditto signs are shown in print, only one ditto sign is used in braille. List this sign on the special symbols page (to be studied in Lesson 19). Example:

Tues: exam 2:00  
Weds: " "  

13.6 Telephone Numbers [VI.27.f]

Follow print spacing for telephone numbers consisting of all numbers. Telephone numbers composed of both letters and numbers are brailled without spaces or contractions, regardless of print.

In lists of telephone numbers for actual use, it is best not to divide seven-digit numbers or letter/number combinations between lines. Long distance numbers may be divided at any point at which a hyphen or space occurs before the seven-digit local number. A telephone number mentioned in a story situation may be divided between lines at any print hyphen. Examples:

(738) 657-9688  
CH 6-1234  
1-800-STOP  
1-956-347-9005  

- Notice that the st contraction is not used in 1-800-STOP. This is because STOP is to be read as individual letters, each letter representing a number to be dialed. This also applies to radio call letters, such as WERN-FM, and any random combination of numbers and letters such as model numbers.

13.7 Postal Codes [VI.27.d]

Postal districts and ZIP codes are spaced in braille as they appear in print. Do not use contractions in postal codes or divide them between lines. Examples:

S.W.1  
M4G 3E8  
RR#1  
W2N 6CH  

TOC -- INDEX
13.8 Dates [VI.27.e] [diff.]

Follow print when a date is indicated by the numbers of the month, day, and year (or day, month, and year) separated by slashes or hyphens. Substitute braille hyphens when print uses other separators, such as spaces or dots. Only one number indicator should precede the entire group. Do not divide between lines.

Examples:

- 5/12/08 5 12 08
- 5-12-08 5 12 08
- 5.12.08 5 12 08

If inclusive dates are joined by a hyphen or a dash, repeat the number indicator before the second date. Example:

Fall Festival 10/2-10/7

Drill 34

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. Caesar Augustus (63 B.C.-14 A.D.) was the first Roman emperor.
2. Dr. Chas. R. Hartwell, Jr., will leave Crown Point, Ind., at 11 a.m. and will arrive at Derry, Penn., at 9 p.m.
3. Mr. and Mrs. L.V. Workman are both receiving their degrees from the U. of M.—he a Ph.D. and she a B.Sc.
4. Mr. Shaw was a staunch admirer of the greatest of all British dramatists, i.e., G.B.S.
5. The new Y.M.C.A. director was formerly connected with the ARC.
6. The AAWB-AEVH-NBA Braille Authority preceded the Braille Authority of North America (BANA).
8. He did his undergraduate work at UMass, then received an LL.D. from OU.
9. Notify me by phone at ED 2-1666 and/or Mr. Hancock by mail, c/o St. Francis Hotel, Toronto, Ontario M5F 3E7.
10. Senator Jones, (D) TN, will head the committee.
11. The bride-to-be, at 5 ft. 8 in. tall and 140 lbs., is 2 ins. taller and 10 lbs. heavier than the groom-to-be.
12. 100°C is equal to 212°F.
13. Dad says that the AARP has a good retirement plan.
13.9 Format for Letters (correspondence)

No rules are given in EBAE or Braille Formats: Principles of Print to Braille Transcription for brailling letters of correspondence. Following are some general guidelines.

13.9a In general. Follow print copy as to the location of headings, inside addresses, closings, and signatures, indenting in braille as they appear in print. Indented paragraphs in the body of the letter should start in the third cell, as all braille paragraphs do.

To block a heading, count the number of cells needed for the longest line. This line should end at the extreme right-hand margin. All other lines of the heading start in the same numbered cell as the longest line. Runover lines should be avoided in the heading and inside address—even if this means that the blocked lines of the heading start left of the middle of the page.

If there is not room to include the last line of the body of the letter as well as the complimentary closing, signature, writer's and typist's initials, and notice of enclosure on a braille page, take the last line of the body of the letter to a new page.

It is recommended that the closing and signature be brailled following the rules for attributions (see 17.5)—i.e., start each line in cell 5.
13.9b  **Blank lines in letters.** Blank lines are left in braille letters between segments that are not distinguished by margin indentions. When a letter is written in *semiblock form*, as in the illustration above and the following exercise, the only place a blank line is needed in braille is between the inside address and the salutation.

If a letter is written in *full block form* (without any indentions) and all segments start at the left margin, the same should be done in braille. In order to enable a braille reader to distinguish the different segments of the letter, leave a blank line is left between the inside address and the salutation, the salutation and the first paragraph, and between following paragraphs. A blank line is also left between the last line of the body of the letter and the closing. If there are writer's initials and/or a notice of enclosures followed by a postscript, a blank line should separate the two.

**EXERCISE**

Prepare the following letter for submission to the instructor. Use the first line of each page for the running head **LESSON 13** and the page number, as usual. A blank line should be left on the first page between the running head and the heading.

745 16th St., N.W.
Washington, DC 20006
3/29/72

Mr. J. W. Wetherby
116 Crumpet St.
London W2N 6AA England

Dear Jim,

Shortly after 10 a.m., Feb. 5th, the SS Tubb reached the good old U.S.A. with me and the Mrs. on board. We were treated to the very best weather the Atlantic has to offer, i.e., wind, rain and fog, with the temperature dropping to 5°F at times. However, the unpleasantness was greatly mitigated by the fact that we became acquainted with many interesting people. Allow me, for instance, to introduce you to Dr. Wm. Windham. (The Dr. is for Ph.D., not M.D.) Windy, as he was familiarly known to his fellow passengers, was formerly head of the Phys. Ed. Dept. of an obscure institution in New Haven, Conn. His specialty is the improvement of health through breath control and Yoga, and being a typical absent-minded prof. we jokingly told him that we feared we might someday find him turning blue in the face from having forgotten to resume breathing.

Also on board were an AFL-CIO official from Texas with an LL.D. from T. C. U. (c1970) and a D.Litt from UCLA and a Conservative M. P. from somewhere in Sussex, whose father had served with Eisenhower at S.H.A.E.F. during the 2d World War. These two were constantly engaged in interminable arguments over the UN and NATO. A third passenger would sometimes join in these discussions. He was a retired AT&T executive who often reminisced about F.D.R. and recalled how he had approved the WPA projects.
Further diversion was provided by a comedian who had performed on several TV networks including ABC and NBC. His wife was more interested in her lineage than in comedy and frequently reminded us of her membership in the DAR.

I will finish this account in a later letter as I must start packing. The Mrs. and I are taking off for Florida for a month of rest in the sun. Until the first of May address your letters to me c/o Gen. H. G. Fairweather, 1210 St. Augustine Rd., W. Palm Beach, FL 33401. Telephone no.: 305-743-6262.

Cordially yours,
Ed Goodman

EGG/ham

P.S. 4/10/72. You can thank a sudden change in the weather for the fact that you are finally receiving this letter. Since arriving here in Fla., the temperature has been in the 70s and 80s, until last night, when it began turning colder about 10 p.m.; and early this a.m. the thermometer on our veranda registered 45°F. I was forced to dig out my coat, and lo and behold! there in the pocket was your letter still unmailed.

Our trip down was remarkably fast—2 hr., 20 min. Not bad for a 1200 mi. jaunt, wouldn't you say? We were able to hitch a ride on an old B-52 that was being flown to Fla. to be used in training missions.

Gen. Fairweather has a beautiful and comfortable house with a large swimming pool that measures 20'6" by 40'. The only disturbing factor which somewhat interferes with my rest and quiet is a constantly barking dog that has the bark of a Great Dane but is about 20 ins. long and weighs all of 2# soaking wet!

I am proud to say that I will soon be able to type my own letters. While I was in England I began taking a correspondence course in typing—at the exorbitant cost of £495, 10% off for cash. I am now struggling with the intricacies of &, @, $, and °. After next month I will no longer need the services of a secretary.

Remember our conversation about the Japanese ¥? If you will check page C6, §4 of last Sunday's paper, you will see that it is on the rebound. Even so, I'll stick with investing in the good ol' US$ and/or the British £.

The wife and I are considering taking a trip to France and Belg. next spring. Would you be interested in joining us? Perhaps we could rent a BMW and do Europe in style. Eh, what?

Cheerio, old bean,
E.G.G.
Lesson 14

Roman Numerals, Fractions, Mixed Numbers, Decimals, Mathematical Signs of Operation, Superscripts and Subscripts, Clock Time, Sports Scores and Votes, Electronic Addresses

14.1 Roman Numerals [VII.30]

14.1a In general. Use the braille letters, just as in print, when transcribing roman numerals. If roman numerals are printed in capital letters, in braille those consisting of a single letter are preceded by a single capital indicator, and those consisting of more than one letter are preceded by the double capital indicator. If roman numerals are printed in lowercase letters, a single letter indicator is placed before the corresponding braille letter or letters. Examples:

- V  XL  x  iii
  - V  XL  x  iii

- Note: For roman numerals representing the number 500 and higher, see EBAE VII.30.c.

14.1b With hyphen, dash, or colon. When roman numerals are separated by a hyphen, dash, or colon, the appropriate capital indicator, double capital indicator, or letter indicator is repeated after the punctuation. For readability, these units should not be divided between braille lines. Examples:

- VI-X  vi-x  V—X  v:x
  - VI-X  vi-x  V—X  v:x

14.1c In reference or page numbers. Follow print when roman numerals are used in references to outlines, page numbers, or full citations. Examples:

- pages ix - xii  Pages  IX - XII
  - see §VII  see § VII

- Note: For other reference numbers containing roman and arabic numerals see 17.5a.

14.1d When preceded by letters. The same rule applies to roman numerals preceded by letters that applies to arabic numbers preceded by letters (see 12.3d). Example:

- aVII  avii
14.1e **When followed by letters or ordinal endings.** When roman numerals are followed by a letter or letters, including ordinal endings, the letter indicator precedes these additions. Do not divide these units between braille lines. Examples:

```
XXV a    x xA    V I . A
```

As with arabic numbers, contractions can be used in English ordinal endings only. [VII.30.b] Examples:

```
1 0th   x t h    2 1 s t    X X I s t
```

```
I e r    V I e    5 s t e n
```

Ier  VIe  (French ordinal endings)  5sten (German ordinal ending)

14.1f **Confusion with contractions.** When a roman numeral could be mistaken for a one-cell, whole-word contraction, or vice versa, as in the sentence, "Charles Very wrote a biography of Charles V." the contraction must be sacrificed, and, in this case, the name spelled out. ( *Les, v*y)

## Drill 35

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. Edward VIII, son of George V, gave up his throne to marry the woman he loved.
2. The pertinent provisions may be found in §59B(ii).
4. The map of the Czech Republic is found on page XVI—XVI being one of the removable pages.
5. Her house is furnished with Louis XIVth furniture.
6. The pros and cons of socialized medicine are set forth in XIV.B of my outline.

### 14.2 Fractions and Similar Number Combinations [VII.28.c]

14.2a **Printed on different levels of type.** The line separating the numerator and the denominator in a fraction is called the fraction line. When the numbers of a fraction are printed on different levels of type, whether directly above one another or offset diagonally, the fraction line is represented in braille by dots 34. The number indicator is not repeated following the fraction line. Do not divide a fraction between braille lines. Example:

```
½    [or]    \[ \frac{1}{2} \]
```
14.2b Printed on same level of type. When a diagonal slash occurs between numbers that are printed on the same level of type, it is sometimes difficult to tell if they represent a fraction or some other number combination. If there is no doubt that it is a fraction, use dots 34 for the fraction line, however, in all other circumstances the two-cell slash should represent the dividing line (See 3.6b). Example:

\[ \frac{3}{4} \text{ lb of butter} \]

He wrote 15/30 on the list.

\[ \text{He wrote 15/30 on the list.} \]

A waltz is played in 3/4 time.

\[ \text{A waltz is played in 3/4 time.} \]

14.3 Mixed Numbers [VII.28. d]

14.3a Whole numbers plus fractions. In braille a whole number is joined to a fraction by a hyphen. The number indicator is not repeated before the fraction. A mixed number cannot be divided between braille lines. Example:

\[ 2\frac{1}{2} \]

When a whole number is shown separated from a fraction by a space (as in stock quotations), it is brailled in the same way as a mixed number with a hyphen substituted for the space. Do not divide this unit between braille lines. Example:

\[ 16 \frac{3}{8} \]

14.3b With hyphens and dashes. As you learned in Lesson Two, when whole numbers are connected by a hyphen, only one number indicator is required; when whole numbers are connected by a dash, two number indicators are needed. Fractions, on the other hand, are always treated individually. When a fraction or a mixed number is connected to another fraction, mixed number, or whole number, either by a hyphen or a short or long dash, a second number indicator is required. No space is left in braille before or after the hyphen or dash. Division between braille lines may be made following the print hyphen or dash only. Examples:

\[
\begin{align*}
3-6 & \quad 3-6 \\
\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{4} & \quad \frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{4} \\
\frac{1}{2} - 1 & \quad 1\frac{1}{2} - 1\frac{1}{2} \\
3\frac{1}{2}-4\frac{1}{2} & \quad 2\frac{1}{2}-3 \\
0 - \frac{1}{2} & \quad 9 - 8\frac{1}{2}
\end{align*}
\]
14.4 Decimals  [VII.28.f, g]

In braille the decimal point is represented by dots 4-6, not the period. The number indicator is always placed before the decimal point. Like fractions, when a decimal fraction is joined to another number by a hyphen or a dash, a second number indicator is required. Examples:

.7  .03  .5 - .7

- Note: Decimals are used with numbers only. For reference numbers containing numbers and letters see 17.5a.

14.4a Mixed numbers. When a number consists of a whole number and a decimal fraction, only one number indicator is used, and it is placed before the whole number. When numbers with decimals are joined to other numbers, the number indicator is repeated following the hyphen or dash. A number containing a decimal point can never be divided between lines. Examples:

90.9 MHz  .5-1.2
6—7.25  7.25—8

14.4b Coinage. The decimal point and the appropriate monetary symbols (dollar, pound, euro, etc.) are used in braille when print shows them to represent decimal coinage. Examples:

$8.75  $1.13  €0.10
$.15  £1.13
$0.32  $5.50—$8.75  6.75—7.50€

14.5 Mathematical Signs of Operation  [VII.28.j]  [diff.]

Books on mathematics, pages of mathematical formulas, and the like, are brailled using a system developed by Dr. Abraham Nemeth called the Nemeth Braille Code for Mathematics and Science Notation. Transcriptions that include computer-related symbols are brailled according to the rules in the Computer Braille Code. These codes are quite different from the literary braille code because they use a unique braille symbol for each of the print mathematical and computer symbols, and should only be studied after the literary braille code has been thoroughly mastered.

In general literature, the literary braille code uses words to express common mathematical signs of operation for plus, minus, times, divided by, squared, equals, to, etc. Examples:

2 x 2 - 1 = 3

4x6=24
The map was drawn on a scale of 1:500.

When dimensions are given in print by using the times sign between measurements, in braille the word by is substituted for the times sign. Examples:

- a 9x12 ft. rug
- a 7x9x2" box
- 7'W x 9"D

* Note: For ease of reading it is suggested that a space be left before the contracted "to" in a ratio. It is also suggested that a space be left before a contracted "by" when it represents the times sign.

### 14.6 Superscript and Subscript Numbers and Letters [VIII.31.f and BF Rule 5, §5.f]

Superscript or subscript letters or numerals that are not footnote indicators are enclosed in parentheses. (Footnotes will be studied in Lesson 17.) They are brailled before or after the word in accordance with their placement and spacing in print. Explain this usage in a transcriber's note, or, if used throughout the volume, on a transcriber's notes page (12.7). Example:

"A Quick-Fix Bar® and lots of H₂O is our favorite snack," said the smiling crew member of America³.

* Note: America³ [pronounced America cubed] was the name of the winner of the 1992 America's Cup regatta.
14.7 Clock Time [VII.28.h]

14.7a Definite points of time. When a definite point of time is expressed in figures, regardless of how it is shown in print, a colon is always used in braille to separate the hours, minutes, and seconds. Only one number indicator is required. These numerical units cannot be divided between braille lines. Examples:

11:30 p.m.  
1:00:15 a.m.

14.7b Intervals of time. When intervals of time are expressed by whole numbers, such as 6-7 p.m., only one number indicator is needed (unless they are divided between braille lines)—the same way as any other hyphenated numerical expression. However, when two units of time are joined and the first unit consists of hours and minutes, a number indicator is required before the second unit. In other words, whenever hours follow minutes, repeat the number indicator.

In print, intervals of time are joined either by an en (short) dash or by a hyphen. In braille, always use a hyphen. Regardless of print spacing, no space should be left before or after the braille hyphen. Division between braille lines can be made only following a print hyphen. Examples:

3–4 a.m.  
6 - 7:12  
4:15-5:00  
5:15–6

14.8 Sports Scores and Votes [VII.28.a] [diff.]

Regardless of print punctuation, a hyphen should be used to separate the numbers of sports scores and the results of votes. Do not divide between lines. See also 2.6c.

14.9 Electronic Addresses

Detailed instructions for transcribing e-mail, website, and Internet addresses, as well as filenames are located in Appendix C.3 of English Braille American Edition. These instructions must be followed carefully in order to render an accurate and usable electronic address in braille.
Drill 36

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. \[ \frac{1}{2} \times 6 \frac{2}{3} = 3 \frac{1}{3}. \]
2. The young ballistics expert determined that death had been caused by a .32-caliber automatic.
3. He bought the stock at \(85 \frac{5}{16}\) and sold it at \(88 \frac{15}{16}\).
4. A rod equals \(5 \frac{1}{2}\) yd., or \(16 \frac{1}{2}\) ft.
5. The length of the astronomical year is about \(365\frac{1}{4}\) days, or \(365\) da., \(5\) hr., \(48\) min., \(45.51\) sec.
6. After deducting withholding tax, \(6\frac{1}{2}\%\) for retirement and \$3.75 for life insurance, his take-home pay amounted to \$463.29 every week.
7. The nurse reported that the patient's pulse had ceased at 1:00:25 a.m.
8. For 30 minutes, 6:15–6:45, the fog was heavy; by 7:00 it was gone.
9. He won the match in three straight sets: 6-3, 6-2, and 6-2, although his opponent had been a 3-1 favorite.
10. General Custer's men were armed with .45/70 Springfield rifles.
11. The cherry pie recipe calls for \(2\frac{1}{2}-3\) cups of sugar.
12. The board he cut was \(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{3}{4}\) in. too long.
13. The rug measured \(9' \times 12'\), but the room was \(8' \frac{1}{2}'' \times 11' \frac{3}{4}''\).
14. \(E = mc^2\) expresses the theory of relativity.
15. Internet users can travel to http://www.zkware~/12hm.org for more details.
16. The 1st Battalion - 64th Armor Regiment is often referred to as the 1/64.

**EXERCISE**

Prepare the following exercise for submission to the instructor. Transcriber's notes need not be added to this exercise material.

**LESSON 14**

1. The high jump was won by Samuel Speed III, who cleared the bar at 6 ft., 10\(\frac{1}{4}\) in.—\(\frac{1}{4}\) in. higher than the previous school record.
2. At \(6\frac{1}{2}\%\) interest his investment of \$3700.00 yielded a return of just \$240.50.
3. In 1952 the principal causes of accidents were: automobiles, 40%; at home, 22.5%; sports and recreation, 15.4%; pedestrians, 8.3%; travel, 6.6%.
4. In the late nineteenth century the American Experience Table of Mortality gave the life expectancy at age 10 as 48.72 years and at age 95 as .50 years.
5. We learned today that the ratio of the circumference of a circle to the radius is expressed \(C = 2 \times R \times 3.1416\) (or \(3 \frac{1}{7}\)).

(continued)
6. For many years a minute of silent prayer was observed each November 11, 11:00–11:01 a.m., to commemorate the signing of the armistice ending World War I.

7. Friday, 2-4 p.m., will be devoted to interviewing applicants for the new position.

8. The banquet will begin promptly at 6:30 p.m.

9. The missile took off from the launching pad at exactly 6:00:15 a.m.

10. With 2/3 of the precincts already reported, the Governor leads his nearest competitor 189,769–160,323, though he had been given less than a 50-50 chance of winning by the pollsters.

11. After 15 innings the two teams were still deadlocked 3–3.

12. The motor number of the stolen car is 030/692.


14. Articles V-VII of the society's constitution deal with the powers and duties of the officers.

15. The title page at the beginning of every braille volume lists the number of braille pages contained in that volume—thus, Pages i-xix and 1-79.

16. Pope John XXIIIrd did much to promote the ecumenical movement.

17. King Louis XVth of France is supposed to have said, "After me, the deluge."

18. Many cities were demolished by the end of World War II—III will probably see the destruction of civilization.

19. Charles I (1600-1649) was beheaded by the Parliamentary faction in England.

20. The mysterious crate measured 6'H x 9'W x 2'D.

21. Move all of the little girls' dresses, sizes 4½-6, to the next rack.

22. Barber, please trim my hair ¼ - ½ inch.

23. You need not worry; a person's temperature is normal when it falls in the 98.4 – 99.2 range.

24. Add a hydrogen ion to H₂O to get heavy water, D₂O.

25. More than 1/3 of our staff will be on vacation from 6/14 to 7/1.


27. Dad still has 20/20 vision, but he doesn't hear very well.
Lesson 15

Emphasis Indicator, Small Capital Letters, Ellipsis, Print Signs of Omission, Quoted Material, Termination Symbol, Order of Punctuation Marks and Composition Signs, Portions of Words in Different Typeface, Enclosed Portions of Words, Punctuation Marks Standing Alone or Enclosed

15.1 The Emphasis Indicator [II.10]

In addition to the composition signs already studied (the capital indicator, the number indicator, the letter indicator, and the transcriber's note symbol), another composition sign, the emphasis indicator, plays an important role in braille reading. In print, when special typefaces such as italics, boldface, small capital letters, or underlining are used to emphasize or to make distinct a word or passage, these changes must be so indicated in braille. In literary braille, nearly all special typefaces are indicated by the same composition sign, the emphasis indicator (dots 46). This configuration is sometimes referred to as the "italic sign." Since it represents all special typefaces, it is more accurate to call it the "emphasis indicator."

Foreign words, titles and proper nouns such as names of ships, subject headings at the beginning of paragraphs, silent thought, and quoted material that is printed in a special typeface all must be distinguished in braille using the emphasis indicator. Sometimes, however, print typeface changes are used merely to make the production more visually appealing, such as when titles are printed in huge letters or script, in which case they are ignored in braille.

15.1a Single emphasis indicator. To indicate that only one word, hyphenated compound word or expression, abbreviation, or number is in a special typeface, a single emphasis indicator is placed before it. The effect of the emphasis indicator continues until the reader encounters a blank cell, a dash, or a slash. For that reason, do not repeat the emphasis indicator after the hyphen in a compound word, after an apostrophe, or after the first period in an unspaced abbreviation. Do repeat it after a space, dash, or slash. Note that the emphasis indicator is placed before the capital indicator. Examples:

March  blue-eyed  bride-to-be
A.M.  1914-18  a priori
LT. COL.  o'clock  l'orange
and/or  and/or  Stop — Now!
15.1a(1) In divided words. The emphasis indicator is not repeated at the beginning of a new line in a divided word or number. Examples:

\begin{verbatim}
re-  4,000,-
peated
un- out-of-
American doors
\end{verbatim}

15.1a(2) With punctuation. The emphasis indicator is placed after opening punctuation such as a quotation mark, bracket, parenthesis, or dash. (See 15.7 for order of punctuation and composition signs.) Examples:

\begin{verbatim}
"Help!"
---Help!
\end{verbatim}

15.1a(3) Change in type size. A change in type size is not considered a change in typeface and should be ignored in braille—unless the change of type size has been used as a form of emphasis. Example:

\begin{verbatim}
Tiny Tim was very small.
\end{verbatim}

15.1b Double emphasis indicator. When no more than three consecutive words are printed in a typeface different from the surrounding text, the single emphasis indicator is placed before each word. When more than three consecutive words (or a combination of words and numbers) are in a special typeface, the first word is preceded by the double, or opening, emphasis indicator (dots 46, 46) and the last word is preceded by the single, or closing, emphasis indicator. Punctuation and composition signs do not terminate the effect of the double emphasis indicator. Examples:

\begin{verbatim}
Hold the bus!
Please! Hold the bus!
Wow! Look at page 3.
\end{verbatim}

If the last word of an emphasized passage of four or more words is a hyphenated compound word, the closing single emphasis indicator precedes the beginning of the compound word. Note that an emphasized hyphenated compound word or phrase counts as one whole emphasized word. If a print emphasized passage begins or ends with a dash, the dash is not included within the braille emphasis indicators. Examples:

\begin{verbatim}
—a happy home-coming—
What a happy home-coming!
Two-thirds of nine is six.
\end{verbatim}
Occasionally a change of type may appear within an emphasized passage. In this case, the emphasis is terminated with the word preceding the change and then resumed with the word following it. Example:

She thought: *Poor Alice Faye really needs* that job.

15.1c **Emphasis indicator and contractions.** Although the emphasis indicator contains a dot 4, it is not regarded as an upper sign. Like the capital indicator, the emphasis indicator is treated as neither a lower nor an upper sign. Therefore, its presence does not alter the application of any of the rules concerning lower signs.

15.1c(1) **Emphasis indicator with part-word lower signs.** When the first syllable of a word contains the letters that comprise a part-word lower sign (such as the word *concrete*), and that word is divided between braille lines, the lower sign cannot be used for the first syllable, as this would result in two consecutive lower signs (the contraction and the hyphen) neither of which is in contact with a character containing a dot 1 or a dot 4. The application of this rule is not altered when the emphasis indicator precedes the word. Examples:

```
Be-
lieve
in-
posed
```

15.1c(2) **Emphasis indicator with whole-word lower signs.**

*In, enough, be, his, was, were.* The capital and/or the emphasis indicator may precede these whole-word lower signs. Examples:

```
This is *his* coat.
```

```
Be careful!
```

Remember, however, that these whole-word contractions cannot be used in contact with any punctuation. This rule is not altered when the emphasis indicator precedes them.

```
"Were you?"
```

```
(be gone)
```

```
Come in.
```

*To, into, and by.* These contractions may be both preceded and followed by the single or double emphasis indicator, just as they can by the capital indicator. Exs:

```
into town
```

```
To err is human.
```

```
Give it to *him, not to me!*
```

```
By default
to George
```

```
By George!```
15.1c(3) **Emphasis indicator with and, for, of, the, with and a.** [XI.37] These words should not be joined if punctuation or composition signs intervene. This applies to the emphasis indicator, which is a composition sign. Examples:

*We get The Times and The Post.*

Just *for the fun of it.*

Just *for the fun of it!*  

The single emphasis indicator affects only a single word; therefore, if only the first word of any of these conjunctions or articles that are normally joined in braille is emphasized, it should be joined to the following word as usual. Example:

*We are for the people.*

15.1d **Unemphasized connecting words.** Follow print when a series of words, all emphasized for the same reason, is connected by an unemphasized incidental word such as *and, for,* or *but.* Example:

*The Thrush, Phoebe, Vireo, Blue Jay and Chickadee are birds of the northern forest.*

15.1e **Consecutive items emphasized for different reasons.** Consecutive items that are emphasized for different reasons are not treated as a single emphasized passage; each item is emphasized individually. Examples:

This paragraph heading is followed by an emphasized term:

*Types of Homicide. Murder in the first degree* is a killing with malice aforethought.

Here an emphasized term is followed by a title:

*A story centering on a single dramatic incident is called a short story. The Necklace* is a perfect example.
A dash (or ellipsis, 15.3) occurring in the middle of an emphasized passage does not terminate the effect of the double emphasis indicator. However, when two words or phrases, separated by a dash, are emphasized for different reasons, or, for a clear understanding of the text need to be independently emphasized, in braille they should be emphasized individually. Example:

We are a party of three—one too many!

15.1f Series of emphasized titles. When a series of proper nouns, such as titles of books, movies, songs, etc., is italicized (or is in any other special typeface) in print, each title is emphasized individually in braille. Example:

On Friday the children sang Farmer in the Dell, Yankee Doodle, The Old Oaken Bucket, and Bobby Shaftoe.

15.1g Single letters in special typeface and/or quotation marks. Because a single letter is distinguished in braille by the letter indicator, when a single letter is printed in italics or boldface and/or enclosed in quotation marks, these print signs of distinction are omitted in braille. (See 12.1g(1)) Examples:

S makes a plural. [or] "S" makes a plural. [or] "S" makes a plural.

*S* makes a plural.

*Note: This is the only instance where print quotation marks are omitted in braille.

15.1h Words and phrases in both a special typeface and quotation marks. When in print a freestanding portion of a word, a whole word or phrase, or an entire passage is emphasized by being both in a different typeface and enclosed in quotation marks, in braille retain the quotation marks and ignore the special typeface. Examples:

Greta just "loves" roses!  "Greta "loves" roses!"

"Re" is a prefix meaning "over again."

"Re" is a prefix meaning "over again."

However, if within an italicized (or otherwise emphasized) passage some words are in quotation marks, or, within a quoted passage some words are in italics, and it is necessary to show such distinctions to the reader, print should be followed, and both the italics and the quotation marks retained. Examples:
"Help!" the boy yelled.

"Is he going too?"

“Will you please play ‘Moonlight Sonata’?”

He thought to himself, I remember so well when she said, "I do."

15.1i **Italicized passages of more than one paragraph.** When an italicized (or otherwise emphasized) passage consists of more than one paragraph, the double emphasis indicator is placed at the beginning of each new paragraph regardless of its length or content (even if the paragraph consists of just one word). The single emphasis indicator, indicating the end of the emphasized material, precedes the *last word* of the *last paragraph*.

15.1j **Summary: Use of the Emphasis Indicator**

The emphasis indicator is used in braille only when words are printed in a different typeface to indicate *emphasis* or *distinction*. Remember that special typefaces employed by printers for visual enhancement are ignored in braille (such as ornate letters or titles printed in script, italics or boldface), but, with only certain exceptions explained below, when an author or publisher chooses to highlight certain parts of text their wishes must be respected and print must be followed. The rules governing the use of the emphasis indicator may be summarized as follows.

**Use the Emphasis Indicator**

1. To indicate *emphasis*. Use the emphasis indicator when print emphasizes a word or phrase by placing it in a different typeface. [Jump! Now!]

2. To show *distinction* when indicated by a special typeface in print for:
   - Foreign words or phrases [Lesson 16]
   - Proper nouns such as names of ships, books, pictures, etc.
   - Subject headings at the beginning of paragraphs [Lesson 19]
   - Silent thought as distinguished from conversation
   - Passages not enclosed in quotation marks that are printed in a type different from that of adjacent text—even when separated from the text by blank lines and/or change of margins [15.5]
**Do Not Use the Emphasis Indicator**

Special typefaces should not be indicated in braille when they have been used in print strictly for stylistic reasons or when distinction is sufficiently indicated in braille by other means, as in the following:

1. When letters that mean letters are preceded by the letter indicator [Class B Xed]
2. When freestanding portions of words are printed in a special typeface [pend -ing]
3. When pronunciations are both emphasized and in parentheses [turkey (tur-kee)]
4. Where a vertical list of words or terms, which is always brailed with a blank line before and after it, is printed in italics or boldface
5. Where chapter titles or other centered headings are printed entirely in italics or boldface
6. Where letters, words, or passages are shown in both quotation marks and a special typeface, except where required for emphasis or distinction

### 15.2 Small Capital Letters [II.10.e]

As with italics, if small, or block, capital letters have been used in print for stylistic purposes, they are ignored in braille and normal capitalization is followed. However, if they are used in print to emphasize or distinguish letters or words, the braille emphasis indicator should be used to indicate this change in typeface.

When common words that are not part of a title are printed in small capitals, they are emphasized in braille and not capitalized. Example:

> It was so obvious she might as well have had **GUILTY** printed on her forehead.

- Note the difference between full capitals and small capitals; small capitals are nearly the same height as lower-case letters: **GUILTY** GUILTY Guilty

When an entire sentence is in same-size small capitals, use normal capitalization. Example:

> The note said: **COME ON OVER!**

When a title appears in small capitals all of the same size, the initial letters of the first and principal words should be capitalized, as well as the first letters of each proper name. Example:

> John Leech was famous for his hunt scenes such as **THE FIRST DAY OF THE SEASON**.

When the first letter of a word that is printed in small capitals is larger than the rest, follow print. Examples:
THE OUT-OF-THE-WAY INN

Gainsborough painted BLUE BOY.

Capt. Jones of the HMS Shanghai said the ship sails at 8 P.M.

Note: Unless needed for emphasis, when brailling abbreviations, as in 8 P.M. above, ignore the change of typeface and use only the appropriate capital indicator(s).

Drill 37

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. The general planned to withhold his attack until after the troops had landed.
2. A good source for ideas for new business enterprises is 999 Little-known Businesses.
3. "Bon appetit!" said the young waiter as he left the table.
4. The STAR-SPANGLED BANNER, written by Francis Scott Key, was adopted as the U.S. national anthem in 1931.
5. We'll make the trip for the children, not in spite of the children.
6. The following books have been written by Lu Bannert: Messages From Hindustan, Discovery, and Night On The Veld.
7. He is arriving at 3 a.m., not p.m.
8. The planets that revolve around the sun are: Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, and Pluto.
9. This is the end, he thought, as the speeding car bore down upon him.
10. "You're on the road to success when you realize that failure is merely a detour."—William G. Milnes, Jr., in The Saturday Evening Post.
11. The Times' JANET DIANA CARR is a first rate reporter.
12. Little Tonya sang clearly, "a, b, c, d, e, f, g."
13. What can it be? he wondered, as he examined the odd-looking package.
14. It is usually easier to get into the state of matrimony than to get out of it.
15. Mark is on the "A" team and Brian is on the "B" team.
If it is desirable to divide this lesson into two sections, the first 18 sentences in the Exercise may be assigned at this time, as they relate only to the material that has been studied to this point.

15.3 The Ellipsis [I.7]

In print, the ellipsis is usually shown as three dots or asterisks used to indicate the omission of a word or words or as a pause between words. In braille, it is represented by dots 3, 3, 3. Space and punctuate this symbol as a word. Examples:

"Fools rush in . . ."  "fools ruk 3 3 3
". . . for they shall inherit the earth.”  "3 3 3 3 3 sy 3 shwiit 3 end 3 3
"Breathe, Melissa. In . . . and out. In . . . and out."  “3 3 3 3 3 3 br 3 melissa 3 3 3 3 3 3

15.3a Ellipsis with a period. Sometimes an ellipsis appears to be four dots rather than three. This is because the ellipsis is either preceded or followed by a period. Since the braille period is not the same as the dots of an ellipsis, it must be determined which of the four dots is the period.

If the sentence is incomplete, i.e., does not contain a subject and a verb and express a complete thought, then the ellipsis is taking the place of missing words within the sentence—in which case the period immediately follows the ellipsis, just as it would a word. If a sentence is grammatically complete, the first dot represents the period and the ellipsis represents a following missing sentence or sentences. In this case, a blank cell is left between the period and the following ellipsis. Example:

As you can see, I have followed your career. . . . As to my own . . . . Well, you know the story.

15.3b Ellipses and emphasis indicators. Like the dash, an ellipsis shown at the beginning or end of an emphasized passage is not included within the emphasis indicators. Example:

He read only part of the sentence, "...the people of the United States, . . . do ordain and establish this Constitution . . ."

• Note that the ellipsis in the middle of an emphasized passage does not terminate the effect of the double emphasis indicator.
When within an emphasized passage an ellipsis or a dash occurs that represents a missing word or words, for purposes of determining whether in braille to use a single or double emphasis indicator, count the ellipsis or dash as one word. Example:

\[ \textit{Gimme the . . . money!} \]

15.3c **Ellipsis ending a paragraph or indented as a paragraph.** Since the ellipsis is treated as a word, where it ends a paragraph and there is not room for it on the line with the other text, it may appear on the following braille line by itself.

If, in the middle of a passage consisting of several paragraphs, the omission of an entire paragraph is indicated by an ellipsis, the ellipsis should be indented as a new paragraph.

If more than one paragraph is printed in a special typeface, an opening emphasis indicator, as explained in §15.1i, precedes each paragraph. If an omitted paragraph within such a passage is indicated by an ellipsis, do not emphasize the ellipsis in braille.

15.4 **Print Signs of Omission [I.5.b, I.7.a]**

In Lesson Three we learned that when print uses a long line to indicate a missing word or missing letters within a word, in braille the omission dash is used. If hyphens are used in print to indicate missing letters in a word, an equal number of hyphens are brailled. When missing letters are indicated by dots, braille an equal number of unspaced braille dots (dot 3). Examples:

Roger B----- Roger B . . . .

15.5 **Quoted or Displayed Material [II.10.f, g]**

When quoted matter, i.e., passages taken verbatim from another source, or other displayed material such as a facsimile of a handwritten note or a sign, is set off in print by blank lines, special typefaces, or indented margins, the following rules should be observed:

- If quoted material appears in both quotation marks and a distinctive typeface, such as italics, in braille the quotation marks are retained but the italics are omitted unless they are needed for emphasis or distinction.
- If displayed material is printed only in italics or another distinctive typeface, it should be emphasized in braille.
- Leave one blank line before and after quoted or displayed material. When material that must be followed by a blank line ends on either line 24 or 25, leave a blank line at the top of the next page following the running head.
- Follow print paragraph format, either indented or blocked.
- Follow print for capitalization. However, it is suggested that fully capitalized passages of more than one sentence be indicated by use of emphasis indicators and normal capitalization used.
15.6 Termination Symbol [II.11]

Another important composition sign is the termination symbol. When there is a change of typeface within a word, it is necessary to alert the reader to that fact. To stop the effect of a special typeface such as the double capital indicator or the emphasis indicator before the end of a word, insert the termination symbol (6, 3) immediately following the emphasized portion to show the return to regular text. Examples:

BASEball 
baseBALL
Hello! 
Hello!

Note: The termination symbol is not used in abbreviations such as AFofL. Abbreviations have their own rules (see 13.2.b).

15.7 Order of Punctuation Marks and Composition Signs [II.8]

Punctuation marks should be brailled in the order that they appear in print. Whenever punctuation and composition signs occur together before a word, number, or letter, the following order should be observed:

1. Opening parenthesis or bracket
2. Opening quotation mark
3. Dash before opening foreign conversation
4. Emphasis indicator
5. Opening Spanish question or exclamation mark (Lesson 16)
6. Non-Latin letter indicator (Lesson 16)
7. Print symbol indicator
8. Dollar or section sign
9. Number indicator
10. Letter indicator
11. Apostrophe
12. Decimal point
13. Capital indicator
14. Accent symbol

15.8 Portions of Words and Numbers in a Different Typeface [II.11]

15.8a Plural abbreviations and suffixes. Letters added to fully capitalized abbreviations are usually printed in lower case. The Braille Authority of North America (BANA), whose responsibility it is to write rules for braille transcribing has not made a provision for using the termination symbol in abbreviations, although it is under consideration. Termination symbols are not generally used in abbreviations; however, if the use of a termination symbol in abbreviations with lower case endings would make it more readable, it is suggested that one be used. Single-cell, part-word contractions are permitted in suffixes. (See 6.1g) Examples:

GI's hats 
ICBMs

The sample will be DNAed today.
15.8b Partially emphasized words. Do not use contractions in partially emphasized words. When a termination symbol is used, it must be listed on a special symbols page (to be studied in Lesson 19). Examples:

"Tie a yellow ribbon 'round the old oak tree," sang the Gls.

Can you be-lieve it? The boss OK'd it!

- Notice that in "be-lieve" the termination symbol immediately follows the emphasized letters, preceding the hyphen and the apostrophe.

15.8c Dividing words. A word containing a termination symbol may be divided between lines, but only following a syllable or a hyphen. Examples:

forty-seven

forty- seven

[or] forty- seven

- Note that a hyphenated-compound word is treated as a whole, and contractions are not used in either portion of the word.

15.8d Partially emphasized numbers. When portions of numbers are emphasized in print, a termination symbol is used in the same way as it is in words. Note that the termination symbol stops the effect of the number indicator as well as the emphasis indicator. Examples:

9876

6:986 45/100 43-47

(Although there is no rule that says a composition sign terminates the effect of a number indicator, for clarity, it is recommended that the number indicator be repeated in situations where the second number is emphasized.)

15.8e Partially emphasized letter/number combinations. Note in the first example that follows that the effect of both the emphasis and number indicators is stopped by the termination symbol, and therefore a letter indicator is not required. Examples:

38m

m38
15.9 Slash in Partially Emphasized Expressions  [VII.28.e(7)]

When a slash occurs between fully capitalized or emphasized words or expressions, repeat the double capital or emphasis indicator following the slash. Because a slash terminates the effect of emphasis indicators, when the first section of such an expression is emphasized, a termination symbol is not required. Examples:

ATC/CN  
\underline{\text{ATC}}/\underline{\text{CN}}  
atc/cn  \underline{\text{atc}}/\underline{\text{cn}}

ATC/en  
\underline{\text{ATC}}/\underline{\text{en}}  
atc/en  \underline{\text{atc}}/\underline{\text{en}}

15.10 Freestanding Portions of Words  [BF Rule 1§4a(1)]

Uncontracted braille is used for a freestanding portion of a word—whether it is standing alone, or preceded or followed by a hyphen. A letter indicator is not used unless the word portion could be confused with a single-letter contraction or a short-form word. Do not use the contractions for to, into, or by before freestanding portions of words. Use emphasis indicators only when needed for emphasis or distinction. (See 15.1j) Examples:

Add -ing to th. \underline{\text{Add}} -ing to \underline{\text{th}}.

Graffiti artists had changed the con to de so now the sign read, "4th Floor Closed Due to Destruction."

\underline{\text{Graffiti artists}} \underline{\text{de}} \underline{\text{sign}} \underline{\text{read}} \underline{\text{4th Floor Closed}}

15.11 Enclosed Portions of Words  [I.3.a]

When letters are enclosed in parentheses or brackets within words, follow print copy and do not divide such words between braille lines. Example:

\underline{\text{ul(t)i} matum}  
\underline{\text{ul}\underline{\text{t}}\underline{\text{i}\underline{\text{m}}\underline{\text{a}}\underline{\text{t}}\underline{\text{u}}\underline{\text{m}}} \underline{\text{m}}}

Although Rule I.3.a. in English Braille American Edition shows contractions used in words containing enclosed letters, that rule is under consideration for revision. It is recommended that Rule 1§4a(3) in Braille Formats be followed and contractions not be used in a word where text calls attention to specific letters by the use of a special typeface or enclosure signs. Example:

\underline{\text{con}form\underline{\text{(i)ty}}}

\underline{\text{con}form\underline{\text{(i)ty}}}  

15.12 Punctuation Marks Standing Alone or Enclosed  [BF Rule 6§1.b]

Place dot 4, the print symbol indicator, (see 13.1e) before a mark of punctuation that is shown standing alone or enclosed within parenthesis, brackets, or quotation marks. Explain this usage in a transcriber's note. Examples:

(\underline{\text{lg. print}} : \underline{\text{alk. paper}})  
\underline{\text{lg}}.\underline{\text{ pr}}.\underline{\text{alk}}.\underline{\text{ pap}}.

And then he added: "?"  
\underline{\text{ added }} \underline{\text{ added"}}
Drill 38

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. *The Mysterious Attitude*. A statement such as, "I wish I could tell you the answer, but . . ." implies that you have inside information that would blow the lid off everything.
2. "You're so . . . so . . ." he yelled in exasperation. He just couldn't find the words to express his frustration. ". . .terrific?" she asked coyly.
3. By disability, as used in the Social Security Act, is meant "inability to engage in substantial gainful activity. . . ."
4. Look at the map on page s4.
5. "I'll be glad when my boot training is over and I can say good-bye to S.. D.... forever," Frank wrote.
6. The word "dispatch" may be spelled either dispatch or despatch.
7. It was the one-o'clock, not the two-o'clock news report, that stated the plane was missing.
8. If she will only permit me to announce our engagement, I will renounce all my bad habits and denounce all my former sweethearts.
9. The ad read: "You simply can't afford to be without a FORD."
10. The letters enclosed in parentheses should be contracted in braille: (dis)t(ing)ui(sh), M(in)n(ea)polis, m(ed)ic(in)al.
11. He was extremely proud of his former connection with the FBI ("G-men are the world's greatest detectives," he was fond of saying).

EXERCISE

Prepare the following exercise for submission to the instructor. Correspondence students: Submit the entire exercise at one time and ignore the line of asterisks between sentences #18 and #19.

LESSON 15

1. The thought that the federal government is wealthy and the states poverty-stricken is a dangerous illusion.
2. Since all men are created equal, it follows a priori that no group is entitled to preferential treatment.
3. This new remote control can program the CD-ROM drive to play a music CD.
4. Back in 1919, when we numbered 105,000,000 in this country, it took some 26,000,000 workers to grow our food, dig our fuels and metals, and make the goods we needed.
5. When O'Brien got up to speak, Todd thought, he just doesn't have any self-assurance.
6. The following books were written by Thomas Wolfe: *Look Homeward, Angel*; *Of Time and the River*; *From Death to Morning*; *The Story of a Novel*; *The Face of a Nation*; *The Web and the Rock*; *You Can't Go Home Again*; *The Hills Beyond*; *A Stone, a Leaf, a Door*.


8. Will the students in group "a" please move so that group "b" can sit down?

9. The local Shakespeare Society is planning to produce one of the following plays this season: *As You Like It*; *King Richard III*; *Julius Caesar*; or *Hamlet*.

10. Sometimes Henry, seated at the head of the table in his little dining room at home, would look around him at his wife and two daughters and recall those ads he saw in the magazines for insurance—the kind with the banner line reading: *Are you, as head of your family, giving your loved ones the protection they need?* or *As family provider your family looks to you for security—now and in the future*.

11. The g in *gnat* is silent.

12. Charlie called to me, "The water's fine. *Come on in!*" So "in" I went!

13. 'It is not the size nor the gold equivalent of what each of us contributes to the world that is a measure of the value of his gifts. The service we render to others is really the rent we pay for room on this earth.' —Wilfred T. Grenfell

14. Thomas Jefferson will long be remembered for his drafting of *The Declaration of Independence*.

15. Steven's thoughts turned to Ritchy, *his idea of a great vacation (but not mine) is just to sit*!

16. **MEMO: THE DOG THAT WOULDN'T BE** is the camp movie this week.

17. Tennyson wrote "*In Memoriam*" to express his grief at the death of a young friend.

18. The Athenians not only had government *of* the people and *for* the people, but also government *by* the people.

   ************************************************************

19. Dwight Eisenhower, when president, said, "*The federal government* did not create the *states* of this republic. *The states* created the *federal government*...."

20. The sign on the wall explained the company policy:

   *It is our rule that no alteration can be made to one of our products by the retailer. Our warranty is in effect only if the product is in its original condition—that is, as it was when it left Kirby & Co.*

21. **MERRIAM-WEBSTER'S NEW COLLEGIATE DICTIONARY** is considered a *descriptive* dictionary; **WEBSTER'S NEW WORLD DICTIONARY** is a *prescriptive* dictionary.

   (continued)
22. *Oh boy, am I in for a dull evening!* he thought when he saw Aunt Em confronting him in the doorway. "What a pleasant surprise!" he said aloud. —*and now I won't know till morning who won the fight on TV.*

23. He scribbled a hasty note: "Will be in N.. Y... City 2 days. Be careful what you tell the d.n internal revenue guy."

24. Article III, Sec. I, of the *Constitution* provides as follows: *The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, . . ., shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, . . . .*

25. In the following words the accented syllable is indicated by italics: proficient, reunify, visionary, unlikely, proviso, discord, pretend.

26. Benny Friedman was the man who put the FOOT in FOOTball.

27. During the 19th century, the sixteen-hour day was not uncommon, whereas today there is talk of shortening the eight-hour day.

28. In the following words the letters enclosed in brackets are optional: encyclop[a]edia, cancel[l]ed, bus[s]es.

29. Soon the *Serene* was plunging through the most terrifying storm of the voyage, 1957's Hurricane Carrie that, only a few hundred miles away, sank the huge four-masted German bark *Pamir*, with a loss of 80 lives.

   It was about this time that Cohen began inscribing a piteous document dealing with "The Last Days on Earth of Leslie Cohen." Excerpts:

   *Constantly wet. Working 18 hours a day. If I ever come out of this alive I'll never set foot on a boat again.*

   *Bad storm again! God has never heard three bums pray as loud as we did.*

   *Another day, another hurricane. This is the worst mistake two men ever made.*

30. The entry "*Coverage only for vicarious liability of named insured (?)*" puzzled the law clerk.

31. NOTICE: The YMCAers will meet Tuesday at 7 p.m.

32. Tom's brother was late for supper so he went all over the neighborhood calling for him, "Char-lie—supper time—Char-lie." Charlie was so far away that he only heard the "::lie:"
Lesson 16

Accent Symbol, Foreign Words in English Text, Anglicized Words, Corrupted Words, Coined Words, Specialized Terminology, Non-Latin Alphabets, Old and Middle English, Foreign Punctuation

16.1 Accent Symbol [V.24.c]

The next braille composition sign to be studied is the accent symbol (dot 4). In braille, this symbol is placed immediately before a letter that, in general literature, is printed with an accent or diacritical mark. In literary braille, where only a few words or sentences are in a foreign language, no distinction is made between different kinds of accent marks.*

Examples:

garçon  ❧❖❖❖❖ ❥❖❖❖❖ ❥❖❖❖❖❖ ❥❖❖❖❖❖ São Paulo ❥❖❖❖❖ ❥❖❖❖❖❖ ❥❖❖❖❖❖

When brailling foreign words printed in regular typeface in English text, accented letters must not form part of a contraction. Examples:

barrière (French) ❥❖❖❖❖❖ ❥❖❖❖❖❖ fiancé (French) ❥❖❖❖❖❖
årstid (Swedish) ❥❖❖❖❖❖ farben (German) ❥❖❖❖❖❖

An accent mark in an English word indicates an entire stressed syllable—not just a letter—and contractions are used. Examples:

blessèd ❥❖❖❖❖❖ reënforce ❥❖❖❖❖❖
coëducation ❥❖❖❖❖❖ wingèd ❥❖❖❖❖❖

When an accent mark is used, it must be listed on a special symbols page (to be studied later).

* The distinction between the various accent marks is made when brailling textbooks in which diacritic markings are used to study pronunciation, or when brailling whole foreign language texts, such as those used in foreign-language instruction. Braille configurations for special characters found in French, Italian, Spanish, German, and Greek are listed in Appendix B of English Braille American Edition. Braille codes for other languages can be found in World Braille Usage (available through the National Library Service for the Blind and Physically Handicapped). Transcribers unfamiliar with the rules of Braille Formats and those prescribed by the Braille Authority of North America's (BANA) Foreign Language Technical Committee should not attempt to transcribe diacritics or foreign language books.

New rules for brailling foreign language texts are now under production at BANA. Until they are available, questions should be directed to the foreign language experts at the National Braille Association (NBA), 95 Allens Creek Road, Rochester, NY 14618 or the California Transcribers and Educators of the Visually Handicapped (CTEVH), 741 North Vermont Ave., Los Angeles, CA 90029.
16.2 Foreign and Anglicized Words Defined

All dictionaries of the English language contain both words of English origin and words that have a foreign origin but have been so incorporated into English that they are considered "anglicized," i.e., part of the language. Many dictionaries also include foreign words that have not acquired an anglicized status but are often used by English speakers. These foreign words are either incorporated in the body of the dictionary and clearly designated as foreign by a special mark, such as a dagger, or are they are listed separately under a heading such as "Foreign Words and Phrases."

Any word listed in the A to Z entries in the body of an English dictionary is considered an English word unless specifically designated as foreign. (See also 16.5.)

16.3 Foreign Words in English Text [V.24]

The rules for brailling foreign words that are distinguished in English text by a different typeface, such as italics, differ from foreign words that are printed in regular typeface.

16.3a Foreign words in distinctive typeface. When foreign words, phrases, or names within English text are printed in a typeface different from the surrounding text, and/or enclosed in quotation marks, follow print. Do not use contractions or letter indicators in such words, and do not use the contractions for to, into, or by before them. Examples:

Nicole is très chic.

"Einbrecher" is the word for "burglar" in German.

The word "educator" comes from the Latin "educare."

"Adiós, Mariá y José," said Father.

We will go to Rome by Via Appia, the old Roman road.
16.3a(1) **Foreign names in English text.** When, in English text, a foreign name is printed in a distinctive typeface such as italics, the italics have been used to distinguish it both as foreign and as a proper noun. Contractions are not used in these names. Example:

During the Battle of Jutland, the German *Derffinger* sank the *Queen Mary*.

16.3a(2) **English names in foreign phrases.** Contractions are not used in English names when they appear within foreign phrases that are set off in a distinctive typeface. Example:

Mother reminisced about *le bon President Kennedy*.

16.3b **Foreign words in regular typeface.** When foreign words and names are printed in regular typeface, contractions and letter indicators are used. Examples:

Nicole is très chic.

"Adiós, Mariá y José," said Father.

However, the following rules must be observed:

16.3b(1) **Foreign and English words spelled alike.** Sometimes a foreign word has the same spelling as an English word, or a braille contraction for an English word, but the meaning, pronunciation, and/or syllable division is different. Where the use of a contraction could cause difficulty in the recognition of such a word, the contraction is not used. Examples:

al fine (äl fe'ne) ález fine· centime (sän teem) cité·
mare nostrum (mer'e nostrum) maré nozrum

Was ist das? waz is da¿

Får jag be om notan! fahr jag be om notann
tae kwon do tae kwon də

Erin go bragh ər in go briə

en la tarde en la tärde in aeternum in æternum
16.3b(2) Single foreign letters or letter combinations. Use a letter indicator before any free-standing, accented or unaccented, single foreign letter in regular typeface. A letter indicator should also be placed before any letter combination that could be mistaken for a short-form word. Examples:

e pluribus unum  \[\text{LE PLURIBUS UNUM}\]

We shall sing a Reel à Bouche.

\[\text{WE S K A R E E L A H O O B E E H} \]

honi soit qui mal y pense

\[\text{HONI SOIT QUI MAL Y P E S E} \]

al dente  \[\text{AL D E T E} \]

ab initio  \[\text{A B I T I O} \]

16.3c Dividing foreign words. A good rule of thumb to use when dividing foreign words is to keep prefixes and suffixes intact and divide compound words into their component parts. This practice, however, can be troublesome for a transcriber who is not familiar with the language. For instance, Spanish words never divide between double ll's, rr's, or between c and h. If, after consulting all available resources, proper division still cannot be determined, do not divide the word. Examples:

La Jo/lía  Ca/bri/llo  co/rre  mu/cho

16.4 Foreign Punctuation Marks [V.24.d]

Punctuation used in foreign languages generally follows that used in English. However, the differences that are pointed out below should be observed when transcribing such material found in English text.

16.4a Foreign quotation marks. When French uses guillemets (« ») or German uses inverted quotation marks („ “) to enclose conversation, these are represented in braille by the appropriate English inner or outer quotation mark symbols. This usage should be explained on a transcriber's notes page (to be studied later).

When dashes are used to enclose foreign-language dialogue instead of quotation marks, in braille they are spaced in the same way as quotation marks. That is, the opening conversation dash, preceded by a space, must be in conjunction with the following word or composition sign(s) preceding the word. And the closing dash, which follows the preceding word or mark of punctuation immediately and cannot be separated from it, is followed by a space.

When a dash is used in braille to introduce foreign conversation, this usage must be explained on a special symbols page (to be studied later). Example:
When asked if he had enough money, Pedro said, —Tengo mas de veinte pesos.—

16.4b Questions and exclamations in Spanish. In Spanish a question is enclosed in question marks, the first one inverted and placed at the beginning of the question. In braille, both the opening and closing question marks are represented by dots 26, different from the English question mark. Similarly, Spanish exclamations begin with an inverted exclamation mark. The exclamation marks are represented by dots 235—just as in English braille. Spanish punctuation marks must be explained on a special symbols page (to be studied later). Examples:

¿Es éste el camino a Puebla?

— ¡Es demasiado! — Ana shouted.

• Note that the emphasis indicator is placed before the opening punctuation—but following the opening dash.

16.5 Anglicized Words

Many words that were once considered foreign have been anglicized. When anglicized words such as carte blanche, enfant terrible, vis-à-vis, coup d'état, or sans serif, which are no longer designated as foreign in the dictionary, are printed in italics, we must assume that the author has chosen to italicize them for emphasis or distinction—in which case the italics are kept and contractions are used. When in doubt consult a reputable dictionary less than ten years old. See 16.2, and refer to §4.5d for suggestions on dictionaries.

Drill 39

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. The attractive divorcée and her distingué protégé created a sensation at the lawn fête.
2. Louis XIV stated the position of all dictators when he said, "L'état c'est moi."
3. The François family with their entire ménage had already departed for Florida.
4. ‘And opening his mouth he taught them saying, “Blessèd are the poor in spirit for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. . . .” ’
5. The newest trend in German politics is Parteiverdrossenheit, or PV for short.

(continued)
6. "Vive la France!" defiantly shouted the young patriot as he was led off to face the firing squad.
7. José de San Martín was one of the leading liberators of South America.
8. Signorina Puccini is auditioning with the Metropolitan Opera Company.
9. Étienne professed to be enchanté to meet la belle Mademoiselle Andersen.
10. The original German title of Erich Remarque's famous book All Quiet on the Western Front was Im Westen Nichts Neues.
11. Egypt is fine, but if we have to go to Port Said again, we're finished — al fine!
12. My family comes from a small town in Italy called Giovanni a Piro.
13. We can keep this little cherub here, but that little enfant terrible will have to go home.
14. "E molto bene di ritornare a casa," said the old woman as she stepped off the train.
15. "When will you be back?" called his comrades as Poncho rode off in the general direction of the border, and his reply was — ¿Quién sabe? —

16.6 Corrupted Words, Coined Words, Specialized Terminology [X.34.d]

16.6a English interspersed with foreign or corrupted foreign words. When transcribing dialect that is a hybrid of English and some foreign language, those emphasized (usually italicized) sentences or phrases that are purely foreign are brailled uncontracted. When unemphasized foreign or corrupted foreign words are interspersed with English, these words are treated as dialect and contractions are used. (See §12.5b(3)) Example:

"Rink the bell, Hans. I vant Ernst und Konrad, now—zupper is ready."
"Ja, Mutter."
"Hurry now. Das ist gut."

16.6b Made-up, or coined, words. A somewhat similar problem arises in the case of made-up words such as those often found in science fiction and verse. These words cannot be regarded as foreign; therefore, they are contracted in the same manner as English words. It is suggested, however, that a contraction or short-form not be used if the letter combination bridges two words in a coined word. Examples:

Use Youthair Cream
Firstar Bank
16.6c Specialized terminology. Foreign words are frequently used in specialized material, such as books on law, medicine, music, and cooking, and for scientific classifications in fields such as botany and zoology. If the meanings are explained in the text or in a glossary, such terms are contracted like English words, even though some of them may not be found in the dictionary. Example:

Some starlings, members of the species Sturnus vulgaris, are fine singers.

16.7 Non-Latin Alphabets [V.24.e, V.26.b] [diff.]

16.7a Non-Latin letter indicator. When letters from non-Latin languages such as Greek, Russian, or Hebrew (the only non-Latin languages for which there are official BANA codes) appear in English text, the braille equivalents of these letters are used and they are preceded by dot 2, the non-Latin letter indicator.

When a non-Latin letter indicator and braille equivalents for non-Latin letters are used, they must be listed on a special symbols page (to be studied later).

16.7b Greek letters. The braille equivalents of Greek letters are listed in Appendix B of English Braille American Edition 1994. Note that in braille many Greek letters are the same as their English counterparts (A and B, for instance), while others have unique configurations (H, P, Y, etc.). A non-Latin letter indicator (dot 2) must precede each Greek letter or letter grouping that stands for letters, not a word. The appropriate single or double capital indicator is used before uppercase Greek letters. Emphasis indicators and letter indicators are not used. To, into, and by cannot be contracted when they precede a foreign letter indicator. Example:

I wrote to ΦΒΚ president, Tom Jones.

16.7c Greek and other non-Latin words. In general literature, the letter indicator (dots 56) precedes each word of a passage consisting of three or fewer Greek or other non-Latin words. In passages of more than three such words, a double letter indicator is used before the first word and a single letter indicator is used before the last word. Print emphasis should be ignored. When a single or double letter indicator is used before such words, this usage must be explained in a transcriber's note or on a special symbols page (to be studied later).
16.8 Old and Middle English, Archaic Spelling [V.26.c]

Old and Middle English employing letters not used in modern English, such as the edh (ð) or thorn (Þ), should be considered as foreign and transcribed in uncontracted braille. For rules regarding letters no longer in use, refer to Braille Formats: Principles of Print to Braille Transcription. Contractions should be used in archaic spellings found in later writings unless their use would cause difficulty in the recognition of a word. For instance, if the ity contraction is used in the archaic spelling of city (citye), it would be read as city-e.

Drill 40

Practice brailling the following sentences.

1. The circumference of a circle is equal to $\pi \times d$.
2. "Écoutez bien," said Professor Moreau, as he launched into his lecture.
3. The Chimbley Sweep is sung by the folk-rock group, The Decemberists.
4. "Geh!" she said. "Mach schnell!"
5. During his senior year at college ('90-91) he lived in the ΠΚΑ house.
6. In music, diminuendo means to play softer by degrees.
7. ΔΕΛΦΟΙ (Delphi) was called the navel of the earth.
8. Goody Thatcher hoped to see her grandchildren become "polished stons" in the church.
   "Them i do hertili inbrace," she wrote.
9. The Greek letters $O$ and $\Omega$ are pronounced the same.
EXERCISE

Prepare the following sentences for submission to the instructor.

LESSON 16

1. "Art thou not, fatal vision, sensible to feeling as to sight? or art thou but a dagger of the mind, a false creation, proceeding from the heat-oppressèd brain?" —Macbeth
2. He had just returned to the café after his tête-à-tête with his fiancée.
3. The new government came into power through a coup d'État but masquerades behind a façade of democracy.
4. The dénouement of the plot began when the professor crashed the party clad in tuxedo and black suède shoes and wearing a boutonnière of lilies of the valley.
5. "Merci beaucoup," said Jacques as I handed him the prize.
6. As the victorious French troops reentered the city, the crowd triumphantly and spontaneously broke into the Marseillaise: "Allons, enfants de la patrie! Le jour de gloire est arrivé! . . ."
7. France was represented at Versailles by Georges Clemenceau.
8. The sign KINΔΥΝΟΣ alerted us to the dangers of driving in the Greek mountains.
9. Jeanne d'Arc was known as the "Maid of Orléans."
10. I said, this restaurant serves all meals table d'hôte, not à la carte.
11. The note began very formally, "Sehr geehrtes Fräulein Mary Smith: . . ."
12. —¡Qué bonita!— exclaimed the handsome young gaucho as he doffed his sombrero to the lovely señorita.
13. The pin on his lapel proudly proclaimed his affiliation with ΣΧ.
14. "'69!" he said emphatically, "that was the year I was born!"
15. The first half of Julia's program closed with Chopin's Étude in E Major.
16. The memory of her insult still rankled in his mind ("gros cochon" she had called him).
17. The motto of the United States is "E pluribus unum."
18. "The situation has been getting rather unhealthy," Filatov told the mass-circulation weekly Argumenty i Fakty.
19. I would like Pasta e Fagioli and a salad, please.
20. I came home from our trip with German marks, French centimes, and Spanish pesos.
22. Serous otitis media is a medical term for fluid in the ear.
23. Winthrop considered his colony to be a model to others; "Wee must Consider that wee shall be as a Citye upon a hill."
24. The priest said he hoped Father hadn't had a faithectomy, since he hasn't seen him in church for months.
Lesson 17

Heads, Reference Symbols (Asterisk), Notes, Source References, Credit Lines, Pagination

Note: In order to prepare the student for unknown situations that may occur in the certification manuscript and future transcriptions, from this point on some topics are explained that may not be tested in the exercises.

17.1 Headings. [BF Rule 4]

Nearly all print headings, whether titles of books, chapters, sections, or subsections are formatted in braille as centered or cell-5 headings. Follow print capitalization for headings. With the exception of paragraph headings (see below), ignore italics or other typeface styles unless they are necessary to show emphasis or distinction.

17.1a Centered headings. As a general rule, centered headings are used in braille to represent the major section headings, such as titles of parts of a book and of chapters. Just as its name implies, a centered heading is centered on one or more lines, preceded and followed by a blank line. Leave a minimum of three blank cells at the beginning and at the end of each line of a centered heading. Long headings may require multiple lines. When a centered heading starts a new braille page, leave a blank line between the running head and the centered heading. (For further instruction on centering refer to page xiv. See 19.6 for the format of chapter headings.)

17.1b Cell-5 headings. When a book uses major headings and subheadings, the major headings are centered and the subheadings are brailled starting in cell 5 with runover lines also starting in cell 5. A cell-5 heading should be preceded by a blank line, but not followed by one. Like a centered heading, when a cell-5 heading starts a new braille page, a blank line is left between it and the running head.

17.1c Paragraph headings. Paragraph headings are words at the beginning of a paragraph—printed in full capitals or in a typeface different from the continuing text—that serve to highlight the important issue of the paragraph. Such headings are emphasized in braille and print capitalization is followed. Do not confuse paragraph headings with purely stylistic letters at the beginning of a chapter or unit, which are not italicized in braille (see 2.2).

17.1d Running head. [BF Rule 1§12b] The Library of Congress and many other agencies require that the title of the book (or a portion of it) be placed at the top of the page as a running head for convenience in collating braille books. You have been using a running head on the pages of each exercise in this course.

When required, the running head must appear consistently on all braille pages of the transcription with two exceptions. The fully capitalized title, rather than a portion of it, is used: (1) on the title page (19.2b(4)) and, (2) on the first page of text (19.3b) in each
volume. If the book being transcribed is part of a series, use the title of the book, not the title of the series, for the running head.

Only one braille line is used for the centered running head. After centering, there must be at least three blank cells left at the beginning of the line and between the end of the running head and the page number. When counting the number of cells available for the running head, remember to give consideration to the number of cells that will be occupied by the longest page number in the entire book. It is preferred that the full, capitalized book title be used as the running head. If this takes up too much room, observe the following in the order given:

- Capitalize only the first letter of the first word and the first letter of principal words in the title. For example, the title GARDEN ISLANDS OF THE GREAT EAST cannot be brailled in full capitals and still leave the required margins, but it will fit as Garden Islands of the Great East.
- Condense the title by omitting minor words or by abbreviating longer words. The title THE CASE OF THE HESITANT HOSTESS cannot be brailled either in full capitals or with just the major words capitalized and still leave the required margins and room for a typical braille page number; therefore, it should be condensed to THE HESITANT HOSTESS. If space permits, use full capitals for a condensed running head.

Do not leave a blank line between a running head and the continuation of text unless a break in context occurs at this point. A blank line is always left between a running head and a centered heading (such as a chapter title) or cell-5 heading.

When an agency chooses not to use a running head, the text continues on line 1 leaving room for three blank cells and the page number at the far right.

- Note: All of the instructions in this lesson are written with the assumption that a running head will be used—as it must be for the certification manuscript.

17.2 Reference Citations in General  [IV]

Authors often add explanatory comments to the text by the use of a reference marker and a note. The reference marker, which may be an asterisk, a dagger, a double dagger, or a superscripted number or letter* is placed immediately following the material being cited. A note, preceded by the same reference marker is then placed somewhere else on the page—or sometimes at the end of the chapter or even the end of the book.

*Textbooks and other scholarly works often use several different types of reference indicators within the same text. This course gives instructions for brailling the asterisk and dagger reference indicators only. Students are strongly advised to avoid using materials containing more complicated indicators, such as superscripted numbers or letters, for their literary certification manuscripts.
17.3 Reference Symbols — The Braille Asterisk

In literary braille, all print reference markers are represented by the braille asterisk (dots 35, 35). A space is left before and after a braille asterisk except when a note number or letter follows it in print. When an asterisk is used in braille it must be listed on a special symbols page (to be studied later). Example:

Veterans* Day [or] Veterans† Day [or] Veterans‡ Day

Just as in print, the braille reference indicator (asterisk) is inserted into the text following the word or words to which it refers. The braille reference indicator, preceded and followed by a blank cell, must be located on the same braille line as the word, or portion thereof, to which it pertains.

When print punctuation follows a reference marker, in braille the two are reversed so that the reference indicator can be preceded and followed by a blank cell. Example:

(. . . quite the opposite.*)

When, in print, a dash follows a reference marker, in braille a space is left between the two. Example:

As shown in the Jones case† — and it must be . . .

17.4 Notes [IV.22]

Notes to the text are sometimes printed at the bottom of the page and referred to as "footnotes." Other publishers place them in the margin along the side of the page, in boxes, or between lines of text. Regardless of print placement, the following rules should be followed.

17.4a Short notes. Insert notes of seven words or fewer into the braille text following the word or words to which they refer. It is general practice, when counting the number of words in a note, to disregard numbers and letters from section identifiers or outlines. Such notes are enclosed in brackets, and the reference markers are omitted. Punctuation and capitalization in notes follow print. Example:

[The following three examples are facsimiles of print pages showing the text with reference markers and the notes located at the bottom of the page.]

. . . France* and Germany.

*According to the writer, Franz Bellot.
If a print reference marker that refers to a short note is located within parenthesis or quotation marks, in braille the short note follows the closing punctuation. Example:

"... and so justice will prevail!" He went on to say...

*Brown disagrees with this argument.

17.4b **Long notes.** Notes of more than seven words should be inserted immediately below the paragraph in which the reference occurs. Each note, preceded by its identifying braille reference indicator, is brailled in paragraph form starting in cell 7 with runover lines starting in cell 5. If a note contains several paragraphs, each one is indented to cell 7. The indention of the note clearly distinguishes it from the text and therefore a blank line is not left either before or after the note. Example:

... brought in by the Moors.* The offspring was the finest horse in Europe.

* The Moors taught the Spanish much about horses ... 

A paragraph may contain several indicators referring to notes, some short and some long. The short notes are inserted into the text as explained above. If there is only one long note in a paragraph, use only the braille asterisk for the reference indicator, regardless of the print symbol, number, or letter.

17.4c **Paragraphs containing multiple reference markers.** When there is reference to more than one long note in a paragraph, regardless of the print symbols, numbers, or letters, insert the braille asterisk followed by the unspaced number 1 (⠹⠽⠦⠦⠦⠦) at the first point of reference, number 2 (⠹⠽⠖⠦⠦⠦) at the second, and so on. At the end of the paragraph each note, preceded by its identifying numbered asterisk and a space (do not include a period) is brailled as a separate paragraph. Begin each in cell 7 with runover lines starting in cell 5.
17.5 Source References [IV.23]

In general, references (such as Chapter 6, page 9, line 2, or Verses 1-6) are brailled as they appear in print. They may be condensed (abbreviated) only if the meaning would be perfectly obvious and considerable space would be saved. When condensing references follow the rules as set forth in English Braille American Edition 1994, Rule IV.23.

17.5a Section numbers and reference citations. Follow print spacing and capitalization when brailling section numbers and reference citations. Print dots used as separators in such citations should be represented by the braille decimal point only when they occur between arabic numbers. When a dot occurs between roman numerals and arabic numbers or between numbers and letters it should be represented by the braille period. Examples:

6.4.5  II.7  LA.E.2.4.1

A letter indicator is needed in a citation only when a letter immediately follows a number, or a number and a comma, colon, or hyphen (see 2.6a). Examples:

13.2b  2:B  6-a, 6-c  9.1.a.  V.3.A(5)(c)  VI.30.a-f

17.5b Biblical and other religious references. In standard prose, references to the Bible, Koran, and other religious works should be brailled as they appear in print. Examples:

Razi on Sura 2:219/216

17.5b(1) Condensing biblical references. Only when brailling a publication that is primarily devoted to religious topics and contains numerous citations should references be condensed. The manner in which a biblical reference is condensed in braille depends upon whether the name of the book is spelled out or abbreviated. The following guidelines for condensing biblical references were developed at the International Consultation on Braille Production of Bibles held in Darmstadt, Germany, in 1983.
17.5b(2) **Condensing biblical quotations when book name is spelled out.** When the book name is spelled out, print should be followed and a space left between the name and the following chapter number. The chapter number and verse or verses are then brailled using a number indicator with each but leaving no space between the two. When condensing, do not divide these chapter and verse numbers between braille lines. Print colons and commas are ignored. Arabic numbers are substituted for roman numerals. Regardless of print, hyphens are used to join verses to verses and chapters to chapters. A dash is used to join verses to chapters. Examples:

- Hebrews VI 9  [or]  Hebrews 6:9  
- Ruth II, 6  
- II Corinthians 2:2 – 4:6  
- Hebrews 9:3-6

17.5b(3) **Condensing biblical citations when book name is abbreviated.** When the name of the biblical book is abbreviated, the same rules apply except that the print abbreviation is used followed immediately by the chapter and verse numbers—each with a number indicator and no intervening space. Do not divide the abbreviated book name and following numbers between lines. Examples:

- Heb. VI 9  [or]  Heb. 6:9  
- Heb. 6:9 –11  
- II Cor. 2:12

When a colon and multiple verse numbers separated by commas follow a chapter number, the commas are retained in braille. Example:

- Timothy 3:2, 3, 4, 6

17.6 **Credit Lines (Attributions) [BF Rule 1§18b(2)]**

17.6a **Author's name or source name following text.** In print, a preface, a piece of poetry, a foreword, an accolade, or a quotation is often followed by the name of the author or someone who is endorsing the author's work—sometimes with an address, affiliation, and date. Also, sometimes following material such as the lyrics of a song there is an acknowledgment of another source, e.g., taken from *A Child's Songbook*. The placement and capitalization of this type of information, called credit lines or attributions, should follow print.

Follow print when credit lines follow the text on the same line. When a credit line appears on the line following text, it should start four cells to the right of the beginning of the preceding braille line. For example, the credit should start in cell 5 if the line before started in cell 1; start in cell 7 if the line before started in cell 3; and so on. The entire attribution should be blocked; that is, each line starts in the same cell. A dash should not precede a credit line unless one appears in print. (For correct spacing of the dash, see 2.5 and 3.4) Do not leave a blank line before or after an attribution unless
required by other braille formats (for example, when a centered heading, which is always preceded by a blank line, follows an attribution). A credit must begin on the same page as the material to which it refers. If this is not possible, a portion of the text should be taken to the next page. If there is not room for an entire credit on the same page, a continuation of these materials may be carried over to the next braille page. Ignore special typefaces unless needed for emphasis or distinction. Example:

... America begins where this book ends.

—Elizabeth Harden
London, 1987

17.6b Author's name or other material preceding text. When in print an author's name, a short verse or quotation (epigraph), a source citation, etc., is printed at the beginning of an article, chapter, poem, or short story, follow print placement and separate it from the title by a blank line. Ignore any special typeface unless needed for emphasis or distinction. Epigraphs are discussed further in Lesson 19.

The title and the author's name must be centered on the braille lines. As with all centered headings, if there is not room to leave at least three blank cells at the beginning and end of the line, divide the material between two consecutive lines.

Leave a blank line (1) before the title, (2) between the title and the author's name, and (3) between the author's name and the body of the text. Example:

On The High Road
William Stevens (1864?-1907)

... It was on a warm spring evening that my parents took me to visit "Uncle Charlie" for the first time. . . .

17.6c Accolades. When brief statements of praise for an author appear on a book's cover or with the front matter, they should be brailled in paragraph style with a blank line between them. Braille the names of the authors of the accolades according to the rules stated above for credit lines.
17.7 **Pagination**

A book that is brailled without any indication of the print page numbers is said to be brailled using *literary-style* pagination. This is the method generally used for magazines, craft instructions, menus, novels, and other recreational reading where it is not important to the braille reader to know where a print page starts or ends.

Interpoint is braille that is embossed on both sides of the page. Agencies that have equipment to produce interpoint should specify the placement of braille and print page numbers.

Pagination of preliminary pages (table of contents, dedications, prefaces, etc.) will be discussed in Lesson 19.

17.7a **Literary-style pagination.** In literary-style pagination, consecutive page numbers are placed so that they end at the right margin of line 1 on every page of a braille edition. This is the method that you have been using in past lessons. *All certification manuscripts must be prepared using literary-style pagination.*

17.7b **Textbook-style pagination.** [BF Rule 1§13]

_The following information is intended to serve simply as an introduction to the world of braille textbook production and has no application to the exercises or certification manuscript required by this course._

_It is suggested that any book that has an index, will be used in a classroom, or serves as a reference be brailed in textbook style; i.e., the beginning of every print page clearly delineated and the print page number noted on the braille page. Because books brailled in textbook style must be prepared using all of the rules outlined in Braille Formats, some of which differ quite significantly from literary rules, it is suggested that students not undertake textbook-style formatting until after achieving literary certification and taking time to thoroughly study textbook rules. A course and certification in braille textbook formatting is available through the National Braille Association._

When a book is brailled in literary style, the braille page numbers are placed at the *top*, right-hand corner of the page. When a book is brailled in textbook style, the braille page numbers are placed at the *bottom*, right-hand corner of the page—and the print page numbers are placed in the top right-hand corner of the page.

When a new print page is started at the top of a braille page, the print page number is brailled in the last cells of the first line, with no fewer than three blank cells left between the page number and the running head.

Consecutive braille page numbers are placed in the last cells of the last line on every page, again leaving room for at least three blank cells between the last word and the page number.

As an example, suppose the book you want to braille starts on print page 1. Using textbook-style pagination, the first braille page will have the print page number 1 at the end on line 1 and the braille page number 1 at the end of the 25th line.

You will not be able to complete the first print page on the first braille page. To indicate to the reader that the first print page continues on to subsequent braille pages, the same print page number is placed on the first line of the next braille page preceded by the
unspaced letter a for the first continued page, the letter b for the second, etc. These letters are brailled without the letter indicator. So, the second braille page will have the print page number a1 (盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲) on the first line and the braille page number 2 (盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲) at the end of line 25.

Suppose that you are on the third braille page before you come to the end of the first print page. To indicate the change to a new print page, a page change indicator is placed on the line immediately following the last line of text of print page 1.

The print page change indicator is a line of unspaced dots 36 that starts at the left-hand margin and continues all the way across the page to the new print page number. No space is left between this indicator and the first symbol of the print page number. Example:

盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲盲blind

If you are in the middle of a sentence or paragraph, the text should continue on the line immediately below the page change indicator.

17.7c Repetition sign. Under no circumstance should a series of page numbers be erased and corrected. If it is found that a braille page number has been repeated in work that was generated on a braillewriter or slate and stylus, insert the repetition sign (dots 56) unspaced before the repeated page number. When used, this sign must be listed on the special symbols page (to be studied in Lesson 19).

17.7d Omission sign. If a braille page number has been omitted, insert the omission sign (dot 5) unspaced before the page number that follows the omission. When used, this sign must be listed on the special symbols page. If several page numbers have been repeated or omitted, this should be explained on a transcriber's notes page (to be studied in Lesson 19).

EXERCISE

Prepare the following exercise for submission to the instructor. It consists of three excerpts, two biblical quotations, a biblical reference, and three accolades. Use the running head LESSON 17 on the first line of every page of the exercise.

On the first page only, leave the 2nd line blank. The excerpt number and following information should start on the 3rd line in standard paragraph format.

When the first excerpt has been completed, leave a blank line before starting the next. Leave a blank line before each succeeding numbered problem.

Use normal paragraphing format and leave one blank line between the biblical quotations, reference, and accolades.

Assume that #4 and #5 are quotations found in a newspaper or a work of fiction. Condense the citation in #6.

If material that must be followed by a blank line ends on lines 24 or 25 of the braille page, leave a blank line following the running head on the next page.
LESSON 17

1. Excerpt based on liner notes accompanying a musical recording.

FRANZ ELLISON, pianist

You are in for a delightful listening experience. Relax and enjoy Franz Ellison playing
*Four Studies for the Left Hand* by Max Reger, *Piano Sonata No. 4* by George Walker, and
*Valses nobles et sentimentales* by Maurice Ravel.

MAX REGER

Most works written for the left hand alone were composed after World War I for returning veterans who had lost the use of their right hand due to war injuries. Max Reger, however, preceded that time, writing the "studies" in 1901.

**Max Reger (1873-1916)** A prodigious composer whose large output represented virtually every musical genre. The title "studies" is a modest intimation that these works are designed primarily for technical development, not for musical enjoyment, but in that respect the title is too self-deprecating. Like the best studies of all times they stand on their own as challenging original works, quite apart from the requirement that they be played by the left hand.

GEORGE WALKER

**George Walker** Born in Washington, D. C., in 1922, he studied at Oberlin College and the Eastman School of Music. He has frequently composed for the piano, including four solo sonatas.

The basic sonority of Walker's Sonata No. 4 is the resonant ringing of octaves, seconds, and fourths, allowed to vibrate in bell-like tintinnabulation. Such sounds open and close each of its two movements. The sonata closes with a retrospective reference, marked *dolce e tranquillo*, to the theme heard at the very beginning of the work.

MAURICE RAVEL

**Maurice Ravel (1875-1937)** Ravel composed his *Valses nobles et sentimentales* in 1911. It is clear even from the most casual listening, that he did not intend to compose simple dance music. Rather he is investigating the very nature of the waltz. He has abstracted the rhythmic heart of the waltz and treated it with loving irony in a highly sophisticated way.

Our neighbors came over. They're sixty-eight. They're broiler farmers. * She plays piano in the church, by songbooks written in do-re-mi notes. I brought a record out—hits of the last sixty years. It was from Caruso to Mario Lanza or something. She didn't recognize one piece of music on that record except Eddy Arnold. They didn't get a radio down there until about 1950, because they weren't wired for electricity.† So we've got one foot in the thirties and one in the seventies.

* "Arkansas is the leading producer of poultry in the United States. The broiler farmer invests somewhere between twenty and thirty thousand dollars in two chicken houses. They hold up to seven thousand baby chicks. The packing company puts the chicks in and supplies the feed and medicine. At the end of eight weeks they're four and a half pounds. The companies pick 'em up and pay you for 'em. Ralph Nader's been after them. It's almost white slavery. The farmer invests and the company can say, 'This is a lousy lot, we're not gonna pay you the full price.' But you're still putting in twelve hours a day."

† Clyde Ellis, a former congressman from Arkansas, recalls, "I wanted to be at my parents' house when electricity came. It was in 1940. We'd all go around flipping the switch, to make sure it hadn't come on yet. We didn't want to miss it. When they finally came on, the lights just barely glowed. I remember my mother smiling. When they came on full, tears started to run down her cheeks. After a while she said: 'Oh, if only we had it when you children were growing up.' We had lots of illness. Anyone who's never been in a family without electricity—with illness—can't imagine the difference. . . . They had all kinds of parties—mountain people getting light for the first time. There are still areas without electricity . . ." (quoted in *Hard Times* [New York: Pantheon Books, 1970]).


I started this letter before dinner (I'm at the White House) and was summoned to the President's study for cocktails. You and I never seem to be on time where the C-in-C is involved. He was in a jovial mood so I guess the visit of Mr. 'Brown'* has gone well. Mrs. R. says that the Pres. feels he got onto a warmer personal basis with Mr. 'Brown.' It amuses me that with the Pres. who is so coldly impersonal himself and with Mr. 'Brown' who belongs to a clan that prides itself on its ability to evaluate people & events impersonally, the object becomes one of getting onto a plane of discourse that has more warmth.

Did I ever tell you that one weekend at H.P. when Mackenzie King† was there and some Vassar girls, we got onto a discussion of post-war organization? The Pres. then talked about a monopoly of post-war military power in the hands of England and the United States. I meekly asked—what about Russia, and the Pres. dismissed it. Tonight Jane Plimpton‡ asked the Pres. a remark of his that we would police the aggressor nations after the war to see that they didn't rearm—who would do the policing? The Pres. remarked: ourselves, the English, the Russians, and the Chinese. Mrs. R. & I both looked at one another and smiled. Then he said, 'If we hang together,' and that he thought we would.

* Mr. "Brown" was the code name for Vyacheslav M. Molotov, Soviet Commissar of Foreign Affairs, whose fateful visit to the White House, where he had pressed for an early second front, had just been concluded.
† Canada's Prime Minister.
‡ Vassar student body head who had attended the Campobello Summer Institute.

(continued)
4. "Render unto Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and unto God the things that are God's." (Matt., xxii, 21.)

5. In a letter to the Thessalonians (1 Thess. 4:11), Paul urges the faithful . . .

6. “There be three things which are too wonderful for me, yea, four which I know not: The way of an eagle in the air; the way of a serpent upon a rock; the way of a ship in the midst of the sea; and the way of a man with a maid.” —Prov. XXX, 18-19


8. "Adds new meaning to the word riveting."
   —Atlanta Journal and Constitution

9. "Masterfully plotted and brilliantly told. The suspense is unrelenting and its satisfaction is guaranteed."
   John Winston
   author of Helpless!
Lesson 18

Special Formats: Poetry, Columns, Tables, Outlines
Suggested Formats: Menus, Recipes

Note: Following are directions for some special formats. For a few there are definite literary code rules. Others are brailled according to the rules in Braille Formats: Principles of Print to Braille Transcription. And there are some for which there are only suggested formats.

18.1 In General

Print employs many different styles to produce the myriad of magazines, newsletters, catalogs, instruction manuals, patterns, menus, etc., that are available to the print reader. Transcribers are often asked to braille recipes, playing cards, words to music, transportation schedules, bank statements, and utility bills. For these, there are no set codes or rules. A sound knowledge of the basic literary braille code and a thorough familiarity with Braille Formats: Principles of Print to Braille Transcription is the best preparation a braillist can have for transcribing such materials. Two national organizations that offer help with special formats are the National Braille Association, Inc., 3 Townline Circle, Rochester, NY 14623, and the California Transcribers and Educators for the Visually Handicapped, 741 N. Vermont Ave., Los Angeles, CA 90029.

18.2 Poetry [BF Rule 10]

18.2a Poetry in prose form. When poetry is written in the form of prose with a mark of punctuation, such as a slash or colon, indicating the end of each poetic line, in braille use the line symbol (dots 345) to represent the print punctuation mark. Leave one blank cell before and after the line symbol. The line symbol may begin or end a braille line, but it may not stand alone on a line. When this symbol is used, list it on the special symbols page (to be studied later). Retain quotation marks and/or special typeface used in print. Example:

"Who can finish this poem?" she asked. "I wandered lonely as a cloud/ That floats
on high o'er vales and hills,/ When all at once I saw a crowd,/ . . ."

:::  fixing up poem::: me ask:::

"I wandered lonely as a cloud/ That floats
on high o'er vales and hills,/ When all at once I saw a crowd/ . . ."
18.2b **Standard poetry format.** When transcribing poetry that is printed with each poetic line starting at the left margin, in braille, start each line in cell 1 with runover lines starting in cell 3. Example:

```
Fust come the blackbirds clatt'rin' in tall trees,
An' settlin' things in windy Congresses, —
```

When poetry shows an indented pattern, braille should follow print. Print poetic lines shown at the farthest left position start in cell 1. The first indented line starts in cell 3. Each further indention starts two cells to the right. Runovers of all lines in the entire poem start two cells to the right of the beginning of the farthest indented line.

A blank line should precede and follow each stanza. Italics are not used in poetry unless they are needed for emphasis or distinction. Example:

Rubáiyát of Omar Kyayyám

Iram indeed is gone with all his Rose,
And Jamshyd's Sev'n-ring'd Cup where no one knows;
But still a Ruby kindles in the Vine,
And many a Garden by the Water blows.

And David's lips are lockt; but in divine
High-piping Pehlevi, with "Wine! Wine! Wine!
Red Wine!"—the Nightingale cries to the Rose
That sallow cheek of hers t' incarnadine.
When a stanza ends on line 24 or 25 of a braille page, on the next page, start the next stanza on line three (following the running head and a blank line).

When a poem occurs in the middle of text and there is not room at the bottom of a braille page for (1) the title (if any), (2) the blank lines which must precede and follow the title, and, (3) the first *two complete* poetic lines of the first stanza, the entire poem should be taken to the next page.

Subsequent stanzas in a poem may be divided between braille pages, but the division should be made so that at least one complete poetic line will appear at the bottom or at the top of the braille page. Do not divide a poetic line between braille pages.

When an ellipsis indicates a missing stanza(s), it should start in cell 1 and be preceded and followed by blank lines.

* Note: Poems with footnotes, irregular indentation patterns, unusual spatial arrangements, numbered lines, or containing scansion and/or stress marks should be transcribed according to the rules in Rule 10 of *Braille Formats*.

18.3 **Columns [BF Rule 7]**

Capitalization and punctuation of items in columns should be the same in braille as they are in print. Emphasis indicators for words printed in italics are used in braille only if they are needed for emphasis or distinction. Columned material is always preceded and followed by a blank line.

When in print every item in a column or list is preceded by a star, a dark dot, or a check mark, in braille these *bullets* are ignored. If only certain items are marked or the columns have headings, see Rule 3§5 and Rule 7§1.c of *Braille Formats*.

18.3a **Lists (single columns).** When in print items are listed in vertical form, i.e., a single column, they should also be brailled vertically. Each item starts in cell 1 with runover lines starting in cell 3. Example:

```
You could tell from looking at Dan's gift list that he held stock in a confectionery company:

✔ Mother - 1# chocolate covered maple candies
✔ Aunt Elizabeth - 2# chocolate assortment
✔ Henry - 2# gum drops
```

But, he couldn't think of a thing to get Dad.

```
[18 - 3]
TOC -- INDEX
```
When lists, such as the one above, have no heading, they can be divided between braille pages only if there is room for at least three items on the first page. Lists with headings are brailled according to the rules in *Braille Formats*.

18.3b **Side-by-side columns.** When columns are shown side by side on one print page they should be presented in braille in the same manner if possible. Following a blank line, begin the first column at the left margin. Leave two blank cells between the end of the longest item in the first column and the left-hand margin of the next column. (For columns consisting of numbers see *BF Rule 7§1e(2)(b).* If necessary, when an entry is too long for a column, runovers are indented two cells to the right of the left-hand margin of the column. Parallel items in each column must begin on the same braille line even though there may be a runover in some lines. Example:

Study the list of botanical and common plant names.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aster ericoides</th>
<th>Heath Aster</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Iris shrevei</td>
<td>Wild Iris or Rainbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosa blanda</td>
<td>Meadow Rose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Note: Although Latin, contractions are used in scientific names. [See 16.6c]

If there are several unrelated columns across a print page, and it is not possible to arrange them in the same way in braille, place as many columns as possible across the braille page with the remaining columns below them. When there is a relationship between the columns, that relationship must be maintained. If there are too many related columns for a braille page, follow Rule 7§1f(2), and 1f(3) in *Braille Formats*.

18.4 **Tables [BF Rule 8]**

A table—an orderly arrangement of items in vertical columns and horizontal rows where the information that is given in the row headings is necessary for an understanding of the material in the columns—should be transcribed according to the rules in *Braille Formats*.

When the body of a table will fill one braille page or less, do not divide it between braille pages, regardless of the amount of unused space on the preceding page.

Example:
MONTHLY INDICATORS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indexed Items</th>
<th>Year Ago</th>
<th>Month Ago</th>
<th>Latest Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>consumer prices, goods and services</td>
<td>283.4</td>
<td>293.1</td>
<td>293.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>producer prices, finished goods</td>
<td>277.9</td>
<td>283.6</td>
<td>283.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>industrial production</td>
<td>142.9</td>
<td>136.9</td>
<td>137.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When preparing the above table you must first determine how many cells in the 40-cell braille line should be allotted for each column. There are four columns in this table—one wide column at the left followed by three narrow columns. Each of the narrow columns will require 6 cells; therefore, 18 cells are needed for the three columns. Next, you must allow 2 blank cells between the columns, or 6 cells in all. You now have a total of 24 cells—18 for brailling the three columns and 6 for spacing between columns. Finally, subtracting 24 from 40 leaves 16 cells to be used for brailling the first column.

A blank line is left preceding, but not following the title of the table. A row of dots 2356, extending across the full width of the page, is used to represent the top heavy horizontal line (known as the top table line), shown in the print table. Dots 1245 represent the heavy bottom line (or bottom table line). Do not leave a blank line before the top table line or after the bottom table line.

In braille, a horizontal line (dots 25) is used to separate each column heading from the material below. This separation line begins with dot 5 at the left margin of each column, followed by an unspaced series of dots 25 extending across the full width of the column.
The column headings and their runovers are left justified above their respective columns. All column headings must end on the same braille line.

Note that in the first column it is necessary to use two braille lines for each of the items, and that these runovers are indented two cells to the right of the left-hand margin of the column. Figures in the other three columns are placed on the same line as the last line of the first column.

Note also the use of guide dots (dot 5) after runovers of two of the items in the first column. These guide dots are very helpful to the reader in following the braille line across from column to column. They should be used whenever four or more blank cells are left after a short item in a column that is followed on the same braille line by entries in other columns. Leave one blank cell before inserting a series of at least three unspaced guide dots within the column. There still must be two blank cells between the end of the guide dots and the beginning of the next column.

18.5 Outlines [BF Rule 7§3]

When an outline is short (occupying not more than a few print pages), use the following format:
- Begin each main outline division (usually I, II, etc.) at the margin, with runover lines starting in cell 5.
- Start subdivisions of the first order (usually A, B, etc.) in cell 3 with runover lines starting in cell 7.
- Indent two cells to the right for the beginning of each lesser subdivision with runover lines also moving two cells to the right. (1/5, 3/7, 5/9, 7/11, etc.)

When transcribing entire texts (such as this manual) or entire sections of texts printed in outline form, follow the rules as set forth in Braille Formats.

18.6 Menus

Many agencies have developed their own formats for items that have no set of rules. Following is one suggested method of brailling a menu.
- Use a forty-cell line. Starting with page one, number each page at the right margin on the first line using arabic numbers.
- Center the fully capitalized name of the restaurant on the first line—or first and second lines if necessary. Use the name, or an abbreviated name if necessary, for the running head on each following page.
- Leave the line following the title blank. If the print menu has a heading such as breakfast, lunch, or dinner, center it on the next line using single capitals. Always leave a blank line before and after a title that is centered.
- Category headings such as From the Grill or Weight Watcher's Specials should start in cell 5 with runover lines also starting in cell 5. Such "cell-5 headings" should always be preceded by a blank line but never followed by one.
- Braille general information, such as, "All entrees include our home-made bread," in standard paragraph form (3/1).
Braille the actual menu choices in list format (see §18.3a), starting each item in cell 1 with runovers in cell 3.

If there are only names of menu items (without descriptions) and prices, the item starts in cell 1 with runovers in cell 3. If the name is followed by a description, start each menu item in cell 1 with runovers in cell 5.

Place the price at the right margin following the end of the name of the menu item. Insert a line of unspaced guide dots (dot 5) between the end of the menu item and the price. Leave a blank cell before and after the guide dots. If there is not room for at least 2 guide dots with a preceding and following blank cell, do not use any guide dots.

Descriptions of menu items should start on the line following the price, blocked in cell 3. When a description requires more than one braille line, divide it so that at least six blank cells are left empty at the end of each line. Do not leave a blank line between a description and the following menu item.

Place any information related to restaurant service, such as sales tax and charge card acceptance, at the end of the menu.

For some lengthy menus, a contents page may be helpful.

18.7 Recipes

The most important ingredient in a brailed recipe is accuracy. An error in the baking time can turn a chef's delight into an abysmal failure. Like menus, there are no hard and fast rules for recipes. The following instructions are given merely as a guideline.

If the recipe starts on a new braille page, center the fully capitalized title on line 3 following the running head and a blank line. If the recipe starts in the middle of a braille page, the title is preceded and followed by a blank line. If there is not room on a braille page for the title and at least three listed ingredients, take the recipe to the next page.

When information, such as the number of servings or preparation time, appears along with the title, in braille this material is placed at the margin with runover lines starting in cell 3. Follow with a blank line. (Note that this information is not treated as a cell-5 heading.)

If a recipe is divided into several parts that are identified by headings such as Cake, Frosting, etc., start these headings in cell 5 with runover lines also starting in cell 5. Cell-5 headings should always be preceded by a blank line but never followed by one.

The ingredients are then brailed in list format (start in cell 1 with runover lines starting in cell 3).

Do not use abbreviations in braille when they are not used in print. Abbreviations are transcribed as they appear in print with one exception. To avoid confusion between can and cup, whenever the abbreviation c is used for cup, the word should be spelled out in braille.

Braille the directions in paragraph format.
EXERCISE

Prepare the following exercise for submission to the instructor. It consists of three poems, an outline, a list of directions, a short story, and a recipe. Do not use the running head LESSON 18 on each page. Instead, start each selection on a new page and place the title of the selection on line one. If a selection has more than one page, use the title as the running head in the usual manner. Number the pages consecutively throughout the exercise. The following source information is included for copyright purposes only and is not to be included in the exercises.


RECUERDO

We were very tired, we were very merry —
We had gone back and forth all night on the ferry.
It was bare and bright, and smelled like a stable —
But we looked into a fire, we leaned across a table,
We lay on the hill-top underneath the moon;
And the whistles kept blowing, and the dawn came soon.

We were very tired, we were very merry —
We had gone back and forth all night on the ferry;
And you ate an apple, and I ate a pear,
From a dozen of each we had bought somewhere;
And the sky went wan, and the wind came cold,
And the sun rose dripping, a bucketful of gold.

We were very tired, we were very merry —
We had gone back and forth all night on the ferry.
We hailed, "Good morrow, mother!" to a shawl-covered head,
And bought a morning paper, which neither of us read;
And she wept, "God bless you!" for the apples and the pears,
And we gave her all our money but our subway fares.

Edna St. Vincent Millay
THE WIND
by Robert Louis Stevenson

I saw you toss the kites on high
And blow the birds about the sky;
And all around I heard you pass,
Like ladies' skirts across the grass—
    O wind, a-blowing all day long,
    O wind, that sings so loud a song!

I saw the different things you did,
But always you yourself you hid.
I felt you push, I heard you call,
I could not see yourself at all—
    O wind, a-blowing all day long,
    O wind, that sings so loud a song!

O you that are so strong and cold,
O blower, are you young or old?
Are you a beast of field and tree,
Or just a stronger child than me?
    O wind, a-blowing all day long,
    O wind, that sings so loud a song!

BOSTON BOYS

WHAT! you want to hear a story all about the old-time glory,
    When your grandsires fought for freedom against the British crown;
When King George's redcoats mustered all their forces, to be flustered
    By our Yankee raw recruits, from each village and each town;

... 

So I tell you now the story all about that old-time glory,
    As my father's father told it long and long ago to me;
How they met and had it out there, what he called their bloodless bout there;
    How he felt. — What! was he there, then? — Why, the leader, that was he!
    Nora Perry
NEW SCHOOL NEEDED

I. Structural deterioration of existing Wilson High School building
   A. Damaged roof covering and rotting roof timbers
      1. Three major leaks during last year
      2. Dust problem caused by termite damage
   B. Crumbling stairwells and broken handrails
   C. Insufficient fireproofing and safety protection
      1. Four fires during last year
      2. Denial of safety rating by city fire marshal
         a. Antiquated sprinkler system
            (1) Not enough outlets
            (2) Not enough water pressure for sustained operation
         b. Inadequate electrical wiring
         c. Insufficient fire-escape routes for current enrollment

II. Inadequate education plan for current and projected enrollment at WHS
   A. Shortage of physical space
      1. No laboratory facilities for science students
      2. Lounges and closet areas currently used for classrooms
         a. All tenth grade English classes
         b. Three eleventh grade French classes
         c. Two twelfth grade hygiene classes
      3. No gymnasium or locker-room facilities
   B. Shortage of equipment
      1. No ranges or ovens for home economics students
      2. No lights or bleachers on outdoor playing field
      3. No spare athletic uniforms
   C. Shortage of money
      1. For new programs
         a. Cancellation of planned state workshop in teacher education
         b. Curtailment of new art program
            (1) No money for supplies for sculpture students
            (2) No money for demonstration lectures by local artists
      2. For teachers
         a. No money for much-needed additional general science teacher
         b. No salary raises for WHS teachers in three years
CPR

Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) is one of the most important of all emergency medical procedures. If a person's heart and breathing have stopped, CPR is essential to maintain circulation and avoid brain damage, which usually begins in 4 to 6 minutes after cardiopulmonary arrest.

- **Make sure the person is truly unconscious.** Shout and tap victim on chest, or shake shoulders gently.
- **Call for help.**
- **Position the victim for CPR.** Place victim flat on back on firm surface.
- **Open the airway.** Place one of your palms across the victim's forehead. Using your other hand, lift the chin up and forward. At the same time, gently push down on the forehead. The chin should be lifted so that the teeth are brought almost together but the mouth is slightly open.
- **Check for breathing.** Place your cheek next to the victim's nose and mouth to feel air being expelled. If there are no signs of breathing, reposition the victim as described in the step above.
- **Begin mouth-to-mouth breathing.** Pinch victim's nostrils together. Take a deep breath and place your open mouth completely over the victim's mouth. Exhale completely into the person's mouth. Repeat 4 times.
- **Check for pulse.** Put two fingers into the groove between the Adam's apple and the neck muscle on the side next to you. Keep trying for 5 or 10 seconds.

If there is no pulse, begin chest compressions. The effect of the compressions is to squeeze the heart between the breastbone and the backbone.

- Kneel next to victim's chest.
- Place your hands, one hand over the other, at tip of victim's breastbone.
- Lock your elbows, shift your weight forward. Bear down on victim's chest, compressing in 1.5 to 2 inches.
- Compress for a half a second. Relax for half second. Compress. Relax. As you compress and relax, count "1 and 2 and 3 and 4 and 5."
- Do 15 compressions by counting to 5 three times.
- Stop compressions. Pinch nostrils, administer 2 strong breaths into victim's mouth.
- Resume compressions — do 15 more.
- Do 4 cycles of compressions and mouth-to-mouth breathing.
- Check for pulse and breathing.
- Continue until help arrives or victim revives.

If you are not trained in CPR, then provide hands-only CPR. That means uninterrupted chest presses of about two per second until paramedics arrive. You do not need to try rescue breathing.
THE FRIDAY POETRY GROUP

Harriet's yearning

Once a week for the past thirteen years the six members of The Friday Poetry Group had met in the back room of Harriet Fisher's Gift Shop. Harriet fancied herself a patron of the arts and made sure that all of the ladies of her church committee and sewing circle were aware of her generosity.

The members were all enthusiastic poetry readers and hopeful poetry writers. Each week the group would gather to discuss a new book of poems, and one member would recite an original verse. Their sessions always ended with a "group reading." They usually chose an old and cherished classic that they would read aloud, each person reading a stanza.

This evening the group had agreed to read John Townsend Trowbridge's Story of the "Barefoot Boy." Old Mr. Reeves took the first stanza, coughing and clearing his throat before reciting in a deep resonant voice, "On Haverhill's pleasant hills there played,/ Some sixty years ago,/ In turned-up trousers, tattered hat,/ Patches and freckles, and all that,/ The Barefoot Boy we know."

When Lillian Sweeny started to read the second stanza her face got very red and her voice quivered. As much as she loved poetry, she hated to speak in public. "He roamed his berry-fields content;/ But while, from bush and brier/ The nimble feet got many a scratch,/ His wit, beneath its homely thatch,/ Aspired to something higher."

Harriet, somewhat disgruntled at having never been asked to join the group, hovered quietly on the other side of the door.

---------------------------------------------

[Braille the following recipe according to the suggested guidelines given in section 18.7. Remember that these are only guidelines, not Code rules. Other agencies may use a different format.]

PECAN CHICKEN SALAD

serves 8

3 lbs. chicken breasts ½ cup chopped green onions
3 cups chicken broth (approx.) 1½ cups sour cream
1 lb. seedless green grapes 1½ cups low fat mayonnaise
1½ cups pecan halves ½ teas. salt
1 cup diced celery ½ teas. pepper
½ cup chopped fresh dill lettuce

Preheat oven to 350°F. Arrange the chicken pieces in a single layer in a 9"x13"x2" pan. Bring the chicken broth to a boil. Pour broth into pan so the chicken is just covered. Cover with foil and bake until cooked through, about 30 minutes. Cool and discard broth.

Shred chicken into bite-size pieces. Combine chicken, grapes, pecans, celery, dill, and onions.

In a separate bowl, combine the sour cream, mayonnaise, salt and pepper. Mix into chicken mixture. Chill, covered, for at least 2 hours before serving. Serve on a bed of lettuce.
Lesson 19

Literary Braille Book Format

Note: In anticipation of rule changes, the BANA board of directors has granted permission for preliminary pages to be prepared according to the rules as set forth in Braille Formats: Principles of Print to Braille Transcription. Therefore, the rules in this lesson follow those of Braille Formats rather than EBAE. Prepare the preliminary pages of your certification manuscript according to the following rules.

19.1 Format in General

The layout of a braille book should follow that of the print book as closely as possible.

19.1a Illustrations, maps, pictures, and diagrams. [BF Rule 17§1g] It is often necessary to omit illustrations and diagrams and the references to them in a braille transcription. If a braille book is not an exact duplication of the print book, a general statement regarding omissions or additions should be placed on the transcriber's notes page (see 19.2e). The omission of pictures on the front of a book or other pictures not related to the text need not be noted.

19.1b Captions. [BF Rule 17§2a] Captions that provide information not given elsewhere in the text should be incorporated, at an appropriate point, into the braille text. Starting in cell 7, braille the relevant word (Map, Picture, etc.) followed by a colon. Following on the same line, copy the caption. Runover lines should start in cell 5. Do not leave a blank line before or after the caption unless required by other formats, such as those for headings.

19.1c Blank lines and breaks in text. [BF Rule 1§16c] Only one blank line is left in braille when in print one or more blank lines are used to indicate a break in thought or a change of time or place. If, in braille, there is not room on the page for such a blank line and one line of continuing text, leave line 25 blank. On the next page, start the text on line 3—leaving the line following the running head blank.

If a series of dots, stars, or other symbols, is used in print to indicate a break in text, these symbols should be represented in braille by three asterisks separated from each other by a blank cell and centered on the braille line. Do not leave a blank line either before or after the line containing the series of asterisks. Do not list asterisks used for this purpose on the special symbols page (see 19.2d). If a line containing such asterisks occurs on line 25 of the braille page, it is not necessary to leave a blank line at the top of the next page.

In braille, quoted or displayed matter, such as letters, stanzas of a poem, etc., are always preceded and followed by one blank line. If such matter ends on line 24 or 25 of the braille page, on the next page leave the line following the running head blank.

A blank line is always left in braille before a centered or cell-5 heading. When there is not room at the bottom of a braille page for such a heading with the appropriate blank lines and at least one line of braille text, the heading is taken to the next page where it is placed on line 3 (following the running head and a blank line).
19.2 Preliminary Pages [BF Rule 2]

For the purposes of braille the following items are considered preliminary pages and are given special page numbers (see 19.2a below). These items are always placed first in a braille volume, and always in the following order:

- title page
- dedication (in volume 1 only)
- special symbols page (if needed)
- transcriber's notes page (if needed)
- table of contents (if any)
- cover/jacket material (if any—in volume 1 only)

Braille only what appears in print. Do not create a contents page, for example, if there isn't one in print. Other front matter that may be included in the braille preliminary pages is discussed in 19.2h.

Braille preliminary pages are followed by text pages, which will be studied in 19.3. A summary to help determine the order of preliminary pages and text pages is located in 19.4.

19.2a Page numbering of preliminary pages. When using literary-style pagination (see 17.7a), as required in Exercise 19 and the trial manuscript, the numbers on the print pages are ignored. Braille preliminary pages are numbered consecutively. The braille page number is placed at the end of line 1—each number preceded by the letter $p$ without the letter indicator. Therefore, in every volume the title page will always be numbered $p1$.

Note: For future reference, when, after certification, material is transcribed using textbook-style pagination (see 17.7b), instructions for preliminary page preparation as stated in Rule 2 of Braille Formats should be carefully studied. The transcriber should be aware that when using textbook pagination, (1) every page must be accounted for—even blank ones, (2) braille preliminary pages do not reflect the print page numbers; they carry only the running braille page number (placed at the end of line 25—each preceded by the letter $p$ without the letter indicator), (3) all authors, with their degrees and affiliations, and all copyright owners and dates are included on the title page. This requirement often necessitates a supplemental title page (see BF Rule 2§3), (4) inclusive preliminary and text braille page numbers, and inclusive print page numbers (both roman and arabic) are listed on the title page, and, (5) the page numbers on the contents page reflect the print page numbers.
19.2b Title page. Information for a braille title page is gleaned from the print title page and the page that is usually on the back of the title page that contains cataloging, copyright, and other publication data. Most braille books will consist of more than one volume. Every volume must have a title page. The order and form of presenting the information needed for a title page may vary with the particular publisher, library, or transcribing group. The Library of Congress requires that the certification manuscript be brailled using literary-style pagination and that the title page contain the following information listed in the following order:

- the book title (fully capitalized)
- subtitle and/or series name (if any)
- author (fully capitalized)
- publisher with first or principal address, city and state only (if given)
- copyright and reproduction notices
- ISBN
- year of braille transcription
- name of transcriber, organization affiliation and address (city and state only)
- total number of braille volumes (in arabic numbers)
- number of the particular volume (in arabic numbers)
- inclusive braille pages (both preliminary and text)

Usually all of the above mentioned items can be listed on one braille page. Following are two model title pages, formatted as they should appear in braille, that illustrate the form required by the Library of Congress for trial manuscripts; other agencies may have different requirements. The first example shows a book with a subtitle and a series name, three authors, the word by before the authors' names because it appears in print, a copyright holder different from the publisher, and is in ten volumes—thus requiring many more lines than the second example. If there is more information than can fit on one page, the rules as stated in Braille Formats Rule 2§3 must be followed.
19.2b(1) **Centering lines (title page).** The Library of Congress requires that each line be centered on the title page of the certification manuscript. Other agencies may ask that all items on a title page start at the left margin. When centering, if any line fills an odd number of cells, the extra blank cell should be placed on the right side of the information, thus making more room for a long title and the page number. With the exception of the first line, all the cells on a line may be used if necessary.

19.2b(2) **Blank lines (title page).** Ideally, the items on a title page should be grouped into the following units with a blank line between each:

1) title, subtitle, series name
2) author's name
3) publisher, copyright information, reproduction notice, ISBN
4) embossing date, transcriber's name, group affiliation and its address
5) volume number and page numbers

The title of the book is always listed on line 1 and the page numbers on line 25. If there is not enough information to fill out the page in this way, with one blank line between groupings, place the word *By* on the line above the transcriber's name. If necessary two blank lines may be left between groupings, starting at the bottom of the page. In other words, if you had five extra lines, you would leave one blank line between groups 1 and 2, 2 and 3, 3 and 4, and 2 blank lines between groups 4 and 5.

When there is more information than will allow for blank lines between each of the groupings mentioned above, condense the information by placing the word *by* on the same line as the date of the transcription. Another line can be saved, if space permits, by combining the publisher's information (see 19.2b(6) below). If even more lines are needed, some of the blank lines that separate the groupings may be deleted, starting at the bottom of the page.

All lines on a title page may be utilized except two. There must be a blank line left between the title (and subtitle if there is one) and the author's name, and another between the author's name and the following publishing information.

When books (usually textbooks) have more authors or editors than can fit on one title page, follow the rules in *Braille Formats* (Rule 2§3) for formatting a supplemental title page.

19.2b(3) **Capitalization (title page).** Only the title (not the subtitle) and the author's name are brailled in full capitals. To fully capitalize compound names, such as McMillian, see 2.1.

19.2b(4) **Title and subtitle (title page).** The title and subtitle should be brailled on consecutive lines. Fully capitalize the title, but not the subtitle. If a title is too long to fit on the first line of the braille page, it should be divided, as evenly as possible, between two or more lines. Make the division at a logical point in the title; do not divide words in a title between lines. If the book is one of a series, the series name is placed on the line immediately following the title, or subtitle, in single capitals.
19.2b(5) **Authors (title page).** If a book has two or more authors, the name of each author should be brailled in full capitals on consecutive lines. If a title page is very full, authors’ names can be joined by the word *and* and placed on the same line. If space will not permit the listing of all the authors on the title page, see *Braille Formats* Rule 2§3. Even if a book is an autobiography, the name of the author is placed on the title page. The word *by* before the author's name is used in braille only if it appears in print.

- **Note:** You were told in 8.1e that when the word *by* occurs at the end of a braille line and there is room to spell it out, it is preferable to contract it and join it to the next word on the next line. On a title page, however, when the lines are centered, it is often clearer to spell out the word *by*. Whether you choose to contract and join or to spell it out, treat the word in the same way wherever it occurs on the title page (with publisher, copyright and transcriber information).

19.2b(6) **Publishers (title page).** Braille the words *Published by* followed by the name of the publisher and the first or principal city (and state, if given) in which they are located. If space permits, all of this information may be placed on one line. Example:

   Published by Random House, Inc., New York

19.2b(7) **Permission from publishers (title page).** Permission to transcribe a book into braille is not required from the publisher or copyright holder as long as the transcriber is working under the auspices of an "authorized entity." An authorized entity is any nonprofit organization or governmental agency having a primary mission to provide specialized services to persons with visual impairments. When permission is not sought, the following statement must appear on the braille title page following the copyright information: **Further reproduction or distribution in other than a specialized format is prohibited.** This statement must appear on the title page of the trial manuscript since students enrolled in this course are working under the auspices of the National Library Service.

   These copyright guidelines apply to books published and transcribed in the United States. A fact sheet on the applicable copyright law can be acquired from NLS (see p. xii) and is available at [www.loc.gov/nls/reference/facts-cop.html](http://www.loc.gov/nls/reference/facts-cop.html). Further information on how to transcribe copyright and reproduction notices can be found in *Braille Formats*, Rule 2§2c(5).

19.2b(8) **Copyright (title page).** For books prepared using literary-style pagination only the latest copyright date is listed on the title page. If there is no copyright date, substitute the word *Printed for Copyright*, followed by the latest printing date.

   The copyright holder is always given on the title page—even when the publisher holds the copyright. Ignore expressions of reservation of rights such as *All rights reserved.*

   If the copyright symbol (©) occurs on the print title page use the braille symbol (❼❼❼❼), placed and spaced as in print. Follow print if both the word and the symbol are shown.
19.2b(9) **ISBN (title page).** When shown in print, the ISBN (International Standard Book Number), the SBN (Standard Book Number), or the ISSN (International Standard Serial Number), is placed on the line immediately following the copyright and reproduction notices preceded by the words **Transcription of.** Follow print punctuation. Example:

Transcription of ISBN: 0-4583-6578-8

Include both the 10- and 13-digit ISBNs on the braille title page if they occur in print. Each is brailled on consecutive lines. Example:

Transcription of ISBN-10: 0-4583-6578-8

19.2b(10) **Transcriber's group affiliation (title page).** List the year that the transcription was completed and the transcriber's name followed by the name of the group (along with its city and state) for whom the transcriber works or from whom the transcriber received the braille assignment. List only the transcriber's city and state if there is no group affiliation.

19.2b(11) **State abbreviations (title page).** Follow print for the publisher's state (if given) whether abbreviated or spelled out. Spell out or use the same kind of abbreviation (two-letter or standard dictionary) for the name of the state of the sponsoring agency and/or the transcriber. When no state is given for the publisher, do not insert one. Use the two-letter state abbreviations for the others.

19.2b(12) **Volume and page numbers (title page).** Arabic numbers are used to indicate the number of a particular volume and the number of volumes in the book. When a book consists of only one braille volume, use the words **In 1 Volume** (instead of "Volume 1").

The numbers of the braille pages contained in the volume are brailled on the last line of the page, preceded by the words **Braille pages.** The numbers of the preliminary pages, each preceded by the letter p without the letter indicator, are followed by the arabic numbered pages. Of course, these page numbers cannot be filled in until the volume is completed and the page numbers known.

19.2c **Dedication page.** If the print text includes a dedication, it should be centered vertically on a new braille page in the **first volume only.** The lines may be centered, indented as a paragraph, or blocked at the left margin in accordance with print placement. Do not braille the word **Dedication** as a title if it is not shown in print. Ignore special typefaces unless needed for emphasis or distinction.

19.2d **Special symbols page.** When the symbols in the following list are used throughout a volume, they are listed on a special symbols page; however, if these symbols are used only one time, or rarely, in a volume, they should be explained in a transcriber's note in the text. This list is partial and suggestive. The transcriber should use best judgment as to whether other symbols are common, or rare enough to be included on a special symbols page.
The special symbols page is located following the title page and the dedication (if there is one). (Note that composition signs are not listed on the Special Symbols page.)

- Symbols used in foreign words and phrases such as: the accent symbol, Spanish punctuation marks, non-Latin letter indicator, the letter indicator used with non-Latin alphabets, and special symbols for accented letters
- asterisk
- ditto mark
- page number repetition or omission symbols
- symbols used for poetic scansion
- pronunciation symbols
- print symbol indicator
- termination symbol
- transcriber's note symbol (only when the termination symbol is used in the same volume)
- symbols from other codes such as Computer Braille Code symbols used in electronic addresses
- any symbols especially devised or assigned special usage by the transcriber
- symbols for crosshatch, copyright, ampersand, and other infrequently used symbols (familiar symbols such as the dollar sign need not be listed)

Follow these steps when preparing a special symbols page:

- Begin a new braille page and center the heading **SPECIAL SYMBOLS USED IN THIS VOLUME** on lines 3 and 4, followed by a blank line.
- If more than one page is required, start a second page with the heading **SPECIAL SYMBOLS (cont.)** centered on line 2 without a blank line following.
- List the symbols in the order found in that volume.
- When three or more symbols fall into a category, group them together under an appropriate cell-5 heading and place them first on the page. Miscellaneous symbols are then grouped together under the heading **Other Symbols**. Note that this differs from the brailled version of a special symbols page in Appendix A of *EBAE*, where the categories "Greek" and "Computer Braille Code" are listed after the other symbols.
- Using the list format, begin each symbol in cell 1 followed by its name according to the wording in the text. When category names or the names of listed symbols are not self-explanatory, give an explanation of the symbol's function or a brief description of the print sign. All runover lines begin in cell 3.
- When a listed symbol contains only right-hand dots or only dots in the middle and/or lowest rows of the cell (such as the accent or termination symbols) enclose the dot numbers in parenthesis following the symbol and a space. Multiple-celled symbols, such as the symbol for "inches" (\raisebox{-1pt}{$:\scriptsize{9}$}), are considered as whole units. Since there is an upper dot in the first cell, the symbol does not need to be described in dot numbers.
Example: [Note that, except for proper nouns, capital letters and periods are not used for listed items. The brailled version of the following Special Symbols page can be found at the back of Drills Reproduced in Braille.]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>RUNNING HEAD</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SPECIAL SYMBOLS USED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN THIS VOLUME</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Computer Braille Code Symbols

- : beginning computer code symbol
- : ending computer code symbol
- : colon
- : slash

Greek

- : (2) non-Latin letter indicator; precedes a Greek letter
- : (56) letter indicator; precedes a Greek word or ends a Greek passage
- :: (56, 56) double letter indicator; precedes a Greek passage of more than three words

Other Symbols

- ^c copyright symbol
- : slash between words
- : inch
- :: (6, 3) termination symbol
- :: (6, 3) transcriber's note symbol

19.2e **Transcriber's notes page.** Whenever a special braille format or usage is required throughout an entire work, rather than interrupting the text with many transcriber's notes, a notation is made on a transcriber's notes page. This page is placed at the beginning of each braille volume following the special symbols page, if there is one.

Some situations that might be mentioned on a transcriber's notes page are a notice of the omission of maps or illustrations, or the explanation of the rearrangement of the print format in order to provide a clearer presentation of recipes or puzzles. If only some maps, charts, etc., are omitted from the braille version, the omissions are noted in a transcriber's note at the appropriate point in the text.

Follow these steps to prepare a transcriber's notes page:

- Beginning on a new braille page, center the heading **TRANSCRIBER'S NOTES** on line 3.
- Leave one blank line.
- List the notes in paragraph format, each one starting in cell 3 with runover lines starting in cell 1. Do not use transcriber's note symbols to enclose notes on a transcriber's notes page.
19.2f **Contents page.** When the print book has a contents page, the entire table of contents is placed at the beginning of the first braille volume only. Each subsequent volume then includes only that portion of the print contents that is contained in that particular volume.

When using *literary-style pagination*, substitute the appropriate braille page number for the page number shown in the print table of contents. Thus, the transcriber will have to wait until the transcription is complete to fill in the page numbers.

Do not create a contents page for a book that does not have one. Do not add items to the contents page that do not appear in print.

Follow print for capitalization and roman or arabic numerals. Do not use emphasis indicators for print italics except where needed for emphasis or distinction. Use normal line spacing, even if the print table of contents is double-spaced.

When the print contents page includes maps, diagrams, etc., that have not been included in the braille edition, omit them from the braille contents page. These omissions must be noted, in the form of a transcriber's note, at the end of the entire contents in the first volume as well as on the transcriber's notes page.

If material that is mentioned on the print contents page has been rearranged in the braille text, the braille table of contents must reflect the new arrangement. For contents pages that have a very complex format, consult Rule 2 in *Braille Formats.*

Following is a typical contents page.

```
Contents

FOREWORD ........................................ iii
PREFACE .......................................... vi
I. Where Am I? ................................. 3
II. Is This Really Kansas? .................... 22
III. The Last Great Days On the Prairie .... 48
IV. Never Again! ............................... 74
Author's Note .................................. 122
```

19.2f(1) **Contents page for the first volume of a multivolume braille edition.** Following is the same contents page as it would appear in braille in the first braille volume. Note that braille page numbers have been substituted for print page numbers. (Instructions for proper volume division are in 19.7.)
- Line 1. Running head
- Line 2. Blank
- Line 3. The heading Contents is centered and follows print capitalization. Print should be followed if a different heading, such as Table of Contents, is used. Do not add a heading if one is not shown in print.
- Line 4. Blank
- Line 5. Center Volume 1. (When a braille edition consists of only one volume, eliminate this line.) Throughout the rest of the table of contents, leave a blank line before the volume number, but not after it.
- Line 6. Place the word Page at the right margin. If print includes the single word Chapter, Essays, Stories, or a similar heading, above the chapter numbers and/or
names, that heading should be placed at the left margin on the same line. If no such heading occurs in print, do not add one in braille.

- Line 7. Begin listing the content items (follow print) at the left margin with the braille page numbers placed at the right margin, regardless of print placement. A line of unspaced guide dots (dot 5) is inserted between the last word of the title or heading and the page number. Leave one blank cell between the end of the heading and the beginning of the guide dots and one blank cell at the end of the guide dots, before the page number.

**Major divisions.** When material prior to the beginning of the story (such as a preface, introduction, foreword, or author's note) or following the story (such as an index or appendix) is included on the contents page, a blank line should separate these divisions from the other contents items, but not from each other.

**Guide dots.** If there is not room between the chapter title and the page number for at least 2 guide dots with a preceding and following blank cell, do not use any guide dots (see line 16). If there is not room for one blank cell between the end of the title and the page number, the title must be continued on the following line(s).

**Runover lines.** When a chapter heading takes more than one line, the runover lines are blocked in cell 3. The page number and guide dots (if used) are placed at the end of the line on which the heading ends. There should be at least six blank cells at the end of every line that does not end in a page number.

**Listed contents.** When a main entry is followed by a subentry, all main entries start in cell 1 with runover lines starting in cell 5. The subentries start in cell 3 with runover lines in cell 7.

If it is necessary to end a volume within a chapter, when listing the contents for the next volume repeat the continuing chapter heading followed by the word *(cont.)*.

If more than one braille page is required for the contents in any braille volume, do not repeat any of the headings (such as Chapter, Page, or volume number) that were used on the first page. Do not leave a blank line between the running head and the continuing contents items.

**19.2f(2) Contents page for succeeding volumes.** The volume number is not included on this page. Using the model on the previous page:

- Line 1. Same
- Line 2. Same
- Line 3. Same
- Line 4. Same as line 6
- Line 5. Same as line 13 for Volume 2.
  Same as lines 16 - 18 for Volume 3.
  Same as lines 21 - 23 for Volume 4.
  Same as lines 4 - 6 (second page) for Volume 5.
19.2g **Cover/jacket material.** Material found on the back of the dust jacket, on the jacket flaps, or on the inside of the book cover, may include, among other things, a summary of the story, a biographical sketch of the author, or a family genealogy. These should all be included in the preliminary pages of the *first volume only*. If these items are short, they may be placed on the same braille page separated by a blank line. If any one of them would take up more than half a braille page, it should be started on a new braille page.

When a summary of the story has no print heading, start it on a new braille page and center the heading **STORY SUMMARY** on line 3. It is recognized that this practice does not follow print format. However, because of the summary's location in the braille volume, without a heading the braille reader might reasonably assume that it is the beginning of the story.

Direct quotations from the body of the story, whether on the cover or inside the front of the book should be ignored, as well as any material meant only to be visually attractive.

19.2h **Other front matter.** The preliminary items listed in 19.2 are always placed first in the braille volume in the order prescribed. Following them are other items from the front matter that will also be given preliminary page numbers, such as a list of other books by the author, listed reviews by other authors, a disclaimer, acknowledgments of borrowed material, an epigraph or poetry, etc. They are placed following the cover/jacket material *in the order in which they occur in the book*. Front matter items that consist of narrative text, such as a preface, prologue, foreword, author's notes, or introduction, are considered "text" and are described in 19.3.

19.2h(1) **Other books by the author.** Other books by the author should be brailled on a new braille page in list format and placed in the *first volume only*.

19.2h(2) **Accolades and reviews by other authors, newspapers, or journals.** Accolades (see 17.6c) and short reviews of the book are brailled in paragraph format with a blank line between each and placed in the *first volume only*.

If more than three braille pages will be needed to braille all of the reviews, it is suggested that they be placed at the end of the last volume. In this case the running braille page numbers are continued to the end of the volume and the words **THE END** are placed at the end of the last page of the last volume. (See 19.9) When such comments are relocated to the end of the last volume, this rearrangement must be noted on the transcriber's notes page.

Braille only the comments about the book being transcribed—ignore advertisements for other books.

19.2h(3) **Disclaimer.** If a book contains a statement that the characters and/or places in the story are purely fictional, this statement is included in the braille version, in the *first volume only*. If there is room, the disclaimer can be placed on the same page as the cover/jacket material or the reviews, separated from them by a blank line.
19.2h(4) **Acknowledgment of materials borrowed.** When material is included in the braille version that has been borrowed from another source (such as song lyrics or poetry), and the publisher credits the source, then it is also credited in braille. When such publisher's acknowledgments are listed with page numbers in the table of contents, follow print. If they are placed in the front or back of a book and are not listed in the table of contents, they are placed on a new braille page at the end of the last braille volume. Those acknowledgments that refer to maps, pictures, and other materials that have been omitted from the braille transcription should not be mentioned.

Do not confuse acknowledgments of borrowed materials with an author's personal words of thanks, which are also often entitled *Acknowledgments.* (See 19.3c)

19.2h(5) **Poetry and epigraphs.** When in print such items are included in the front matter and shown on a page by themselves, each one should begin a new braille page and be placed in the *first volume only.* Poetry should be brailled according to the rules in18.2.\[\]

An *epigraph* is a short introductory statement, often a quotation or motto placed at the beginning of a book, a book unit, or chapter. When an epigraph is printed on a page by itself, it should be transcribed in the same manner as a dedication. Retain quotation marks if shown in print but do not note italics unless needed for emphasis or distinction. For epigraphs at the beginning of each chapter see 19.5.

Poetry, epigraphs, quotations, and the like should be paginated as a preliminary page if they fall before the table of contents or before the beginning of text pages (see below). If they occur after the beginning of the text pages, they are paginated as text pages.

19.3 **Text Pages [BF Rule 1§14.b, Rule 2§1]**

Preliminary pages, numbered as "p" pages, must come first in a braille volume. Text pages, with arabic numbering, follow. They start with the first page upon which narrative text is found. This may be a preface, introduction, foreword, author's note, etc.

A summary to help determine the order of preliminary pages and text pages is located in 19.4.

19.3a **Page numbering of text pages.** In literary-style pagination, arabic numbering starts on the first page of text and continues throughout all volumes, including any end matter such as an epilogue or information about the author. Therefore, in the first volume following the preliminary pages, the first page of text will be numbered arabic 1 (\[\#\] \[\#\]) placed at the end of line 1.

19.3b **First page of text.** Following the braille preliminary pages, the text pages are brailled *in the order in which they appear in print.* So, the first page of text may be the first page of an introduction, acknowledgments, a preface—or it might be the first page of the first chapter. If there is both an introduction and a preface, for instance, braille them in the print order. There is one exception to this rule: if a narrative piece, such as a preface, comes before a table of contents in print, in braille place the preface following the table of contents, but do not add to or change the print list of contents. When the
There are only two pages in a braille volume that do not carry a running head—the title page and the first page of text.

In every braille volume, starting on a new braille page, instead of a running head on the first page of text, place the complete book title, subtitle (if any), and series name (if any). The unabbreviated book title is brailled in full capitals and centered on the first line or lines. If the book has a subtitle, it is placed on the next line with only the first letter of the first word and other principal words capitalized. Leave at least three blank cells at the beginning and end of each line, and at least three blank cells between the end of the first line and the page number. Leave a blank line between the complete title and any heading or the text that follows.

19.3c Preface, foreword, prologue, introduction, author's personal acknowledgments.

When such items are shown in print, each one should begin a new braille page and should be placed in the first volume only. If there is a heading in print, in braille it is centered and print capitalization is followed. Ignore special typefaces in headings unless needed for emphasis or distinction.

19.4 Summary: Order of Preliminary and Text Pages

To determine the order of braille preliminary and text pages follow these steps:

- Look carefully at all of the print pages that precede the start of the first chapter and determine which should be considered the beginning of "text" pages in braille. (See 19.3b)

- Note which of the items in the list in 19.2 are pertinent to your book and list them on a sheet of paper in the order prescribed.

- Note all other print preliminary pages (see 19.2h) prior to the beginning of text (if any), and continue listing each of those in the order in which they appear in the print book.

- If a narrative piece, such as a preface, is located before a table of contents, transpose the two, but do not add to or change the contents page. The preface then becomes the first page of text. Only narrative pieces preceding the table of contents should be moved. The order and format of the braille version should be as close to the print copy as possible.

- Consecutively number all items that follow the beginning of text in arabic numbers, including poetry, epigraphs, etc.

- Ignore print pages that simply repeat the title.
19.5 Book Broken into Units \([BF\ Rule\ 1\S13c(3)]\)

Whenever print uses an entire page for a unit heading (such as \textit{Part I}), this page should be omitted in braille. Such a heading should be centered and separated by a blank line from other headings or text that precede and/or follow it. Follow print capitalization. Ignore special typefaces when an entire heading is printed in italics or small capitals. Use emphasis indicators for a word, or words, within a heading that is emphasized or foreign.

If an epigraph is printed on the same page as a unit or chapter title, place it before or after the title, as it appears in print, preceded and followed by a blank line. Use normal margins and follow print for paragraph indentions. Retain quotation marks if shown in print but do not note italics unless needed for emphasis or distinction.

19.6 Chapter Titles

Chapter titles are treated as centered headings. Follow print for capitalization and roman or arabic numerals. Use emphasis indicators for print italics only if emphasis or distinction is required, such as for an italicized foreign word within the title.

A long title should be divided and brailled, centered, on consecutive lines. At least three blank cells must be left at the beginning and ending of each line. If a chapter heading consists of both a number and a title, both should be placed on one braille line if space permits. When placed on one line, the chapter number comes first followed by a space and the title—regardless of print placement. Formatting must be consistent throughout a book. If any chapter heading in a book is too long to be placed on the same line with the chapter number, then all chapters should have the chapter number centered on one line and the chapter title centered on the next.

Start the first chapter of a book on a new braille page. When following chapters end in the middle of a braille page, the next chapter should start on that same page as long as there is room for the chapter heading with its preceding and following blank lines and \textit{at least one line} of braille text. When a new chapter starts at the top of a braille page, a blank line is left between the running head and the chapter heading.

When a braille volume ends in the middle of a chapter, the first page of text in the following volume should carry, first, the full title of the book (no running head), followed by a blank line and the centered chapter heading followed by the word \textit{(cont.)}.

Example:

[Assume that the following example is the first page of text, and that in print "Part I" is on a page by itself.]
PART I

RAW WINDS AND UNSTEADY SEAS
The Story of Marvin Steele

Chapter 1
THE JOURNEY HOME

"Home is the place where when you have
to go there They have to take you in."

Marvin Steele was a man much like his name, hard, cunning, crafty when
dealing with others. Still it was . . .

19.7 Volume Size and Division

The ideal place for a volume division is at the end of a chapter or other unit of the text. When this is not possible, division should be made at a point where there is a logical break in context or thought. Do not divide in the middle of a paragraph, no matter how long that paragraph may be.

The optimal size of a braille volume is one hundred pages, but may vary between approximately ninety and one hundred and ten pages (a page, in this instance, refers to an actual piece of paper, not to braille page numbers). If the total number of pages exceeds a hundred and fifteen, divide the book into two volumes. Because of the bulk of a braille volume, division should always favor smaller volumes. The variation between any two volumes in the same book should not exceed fifteen pages. Remember to include the preliminary pages in the count.

To determine in advance the number and length of braille volumes, use the following formula:

a) Braille 50 full pages of braille. Include preliminary pages in this count only if they are full, or nearly so.

b) 50 braille pages equal ____ print pages.

c) The total number of print pages in the book is ____.

d) Divide the total number of print pages by the answer in line (b). This will determine the number of braille half-volumes.

e) For an estimate of the number of full braille volumes, divide the answer in (d) by 2.
19.8 Appendixes, Glossaries, Bibliographies, Indexes, Etc.

When such items are shown in print they should be reproduced in braille unless the sponsoring agency directs otherwise. Each one begins a new braille page with the heading as shown in print centered on the third line. Leave a blank line to separate the heading from the following text.

Consult Braille Formats for the correct braille formats to be used for glossaries and indexes. Books containing such end matter are transcribed using textbook-style pagination.

19.9 End-of-Volume and End-of-Book Indication

The Library of Congress requires an end-of-volume indication on the certification manuscript. Other agencies may not have this requirement.

Indication of the volume ending should appear on the last page of the volume whether that page contains text, an author's notes, index, or any other material. The words END OF VOLUME followed by the appropriate volume number (such as END OF VOLUME 4) are centered below the last line of braille on the last page of each volume except the final one. In the final volume, only the words THE END are used.

Whenever possible, one blank line should precede the end-of-volume indication. However, if a volume ends on line 24 of the page, line 25 should be used for this purpose. When a volume ends on line 25, the end-of-volume indicator may be placed on that line so long as there is room for three blank cells between the end of the text and the end-of-volume indicator. If this is not possible, the last line of braille text must be carried over to another page.

EXERCISE

Prepare the following material for submission to the instructor. It consists of the title page, contents and other preliminary pages, as well as a portion of text from In the Shadow of a Rainbow by Robert Franklin Leslie (New York: Norton & Co., Inc., 1974).

Transcribe this material using a 40-cell braille line and a running head appropriate for this book (not LESSON 19). Use literary-style pagination.

When preparing the title page, assume that this book will consist of four volumes, and that Volume 1 will end with braille page 74.

A special symbols page will be required for this transcription. There is no need for a transcriber's notes page.

On the braille contents page, under Volume 1, you will only be able to list braille page numbers for the author's note and the first chapter. Therefore, following Chapter 1, instead of brailling Volume 2, use the heading Following Volumes. Then list the remaining chapters. Use guide dots following the chapter names but leave the place for the page numbers blank.

You can tell by the print page numbers on the table of contents page that the braille page numbers will require three cells and you should choose the running head accordingly.

Since this is only a portion of a book, do not use an end-of-volume or end-of-book indicator on the last page.
In the Shadow of a Rainbow
By Robert Franklin Leslie:

READ THE WILD WATER
HIGH TRAILS WEST
THE BEARS AND I
WILD PETS

For younger readers:
WILD BURRO RESCUE
WILD COURAGE

In the Shadow of a Rainbow

The True Story of a Friendship Between Man and Wolf

by
Robert Franklin Leslie

W. W. NORTON & COMPANY, INC.
New York
To
my good friend
Gregory Tah-Kloma,
wolf-man of the Kitiwanga
Contents

Author’s Note 9
1. Náhani of Nakinilerak 15
2. To Know a Wolf 27
3. An Awesome Journey 41
4. Trapper-Dan 55
5. The Náhani Mystique 65
6. A Fragile Image 79
7. The Danger Route 91
8. Eyes in the Shadows 103
9. The Wolves Come Home 113
10. The Way of the Northern Wild 125
11. The Monarch of Denetiah 135
12. A Song of the Kitiwanga 147
13. A Wolf Betrayed 157
14. Reconciliation 167
15. The Hunters 187
Late one afternoon in the summer of 1970, a young Indian beached his canoe near my Babine Lake campsite in the backwoods of British Columbia. Clad only in shorts, he was tall and muscular, and wore his hair shoulder length. The young man introduced himself as Gregory Tah-Kloma, and told me he was a Chimmesyan of the Tsimshian band. That evening Greg sat by my campfire and grilled salmon filets for both of us.

During the weeks that followed, Greg and I became staunch friends. We canoed, hiked, prospected, and camped as a team. I learned that he had worked in various mills and mines to pay his way through college. His hands still bore calluses from that work. He was now a graduate student in mineralogy, and spent his summers at placer gold deposits along drainage systems footing British Columbia watersheds. We were both on the way to prospect Babine tributaries when we met.

Night after night, until the black frost of October drove us toward civilization, we sat by the campfire and talked. Gradually Greg told me the remarkable true story of his devotion to a threatened pack of timber wolves, a story that included his search to relocate the amazing female wolf pack leader, known as Náhání, whose unusual company he had first enjoyed in the summer of 1964. His compelling
AUTHOR’S NOTE

drive to find the wolf and her pack before trappers and bounty hunters could destroy them reached unique proportions. His fascination for the wolf often took him to the brink of disaster.

I asked Greg’s permission to write down his story, and he agreed. He had kept a log in which he listed events in chronological order, and a diary in which he entered his personal feelings and reactions. He allowed me to draw freely on both.

In order to protect the privacy of living individuals and to protect Náhani—who is still very much alive—certain place names and locations have been changed, and various encounters between humans have been slightly altered. However, none of the facts of Gregory Tah-Kloma’s adventures with Náhani and her wolf pack have been changed. They are as he told them to me.

Robert Franklin Leslie
March, 1974

There is a pleasure in the pathless woods.
There is rapture in the lonely shore,
There is society where none intrudes . . .
I love not man less, but nature more.
—George Gordon, Lord Byron
In the Shadow of a Rainbow
Along the southern belly of British Columbia’s north-central wilderness stretches the lake country. Narrow troughs of water up to 130 miles long wind through the canyonlands and resemble wide, gentian-blue belts—their names are Babine, Takla, Tchentlo, Trembleur, Stuart, Nakinilerak, and fifty more.

The longest of these southern “belly” lakes, Babine and Takla, lie in trenches between the Babine Range to the west and the Hogem Range to the east. A knifey Bait Range separates these two lakes. Through a broad glacial canal at the Bait’s southern terminus, a series of five smaller lakes, the basin tarns, drain through short creeks that feed Takla.

An ancient Indian trade trail through the Babine-Takla region connects several primitive mountain settlements,
often fifty miles apart. The route skirts the upper beach of Friday Lake, northernmost of the five basin tarns. A narrow flume drains Friday into Nakinilerak Lake. Of a winter the trade trail serves aged Carrier Indian trappers who follow ax blazes on the hemlock trunks high above seasonal snow line. Of a summer, possibly half a dozen die-hard sourdough prospectors may dream their way along this obsolete footpath, but no agency maintains or supervises the uninhabited route.

Seven miles south of the old trade trail, a short morning’s hike by game runs, lies Nakinilerak Lake, a wilderness gem five miles long, half a mile wide.

In a clump of Sitka spruce and quaking aspens, Gregory Tah-Kloma’s campsite straddled a breezy, bug-free peninsula near the lake’s intake flume. The year was 1964. About two months remained before a late September or early October snowstorm would hurl him back over the archaic trade route to the totem-pole settlement of Hazelton, where he had left his station wagon with a friend. Prospectors cursed that sixty-mile trek between Friday Lake and Hazelton as a backbreaker, full of deadfalls, winddowns, devil’s-claw, icy fords, and landslides. But Greg wasn’t worried. His pack would be lighter because he would hide his tools at the “diggin’s”; his food supply would be exhausted; he would throw away his dirty clothes. Much of the route would skim downhill, paralleling the right bank of the Suskwa River.

During the first ten days of July, Greg had panned the stream bed between Friday Lake and his campsite. Thousands of years ago receding Ice Age glaciers had deposited pockets of placer gold nuggets the size of pinheads—smaller—along bedrock riffles beneath everything from a two-foot overburden of glacial mica up to mountainous moraines.

One morning shortly after breakfast Greg sat rocking back and forth on a driftwood log near his campfire. He liked to finger the two pounds of “dust” he had accumulated in a canvas bag—a bonanza to supplement his winter salary at the refinery near Prince George. If gold came in any other color, he reflected, nobody would prize the metal half as much. Chimmesyans say, “Gold is sunshine stored in a rock.”

As he zippered his precious loot into a rucksack side pocket, he noticed a man trudging up the beach from Nakinilerak’s southern end.

From a distance the stranger appeared middle-aged. Probably a Carrier, Greg surmised, by the way the man stooped under a tumpline basket tote. Plainly bushed after his long cross-country journey, he leaned heavily upon an alpenstock every four or five steps. With a carbine balanced and clutched at the breech, the man’s left arm swung like the shank of a pendulum.

Greg tried to imagine what the Indian had been doing afoot in that stony wilderness south of Nakinilerak Lake—maybe he, too, was a prospector, maybe a bounty hunter.

“Good morning, sir!” the stranger said as he shuffled up to the smoky campfire. His buck-toothed smile reminded Greg of cartoons depicting friendly beavers. “My name is Eugene Charley. You have been here long?”

Before giving Greg a chance to answer, he quickly explained that he had been visiting relatives and hunting
IN THE SHADOW OF A RAINBOW
wolves on lower Takla Lake. He belonged to the Carrier
band. (Because of French language influence, Canadian
Indians generally say “band” instead of “tribe.”)

“I came before the Moon-of-Walking-Thunder,” Greg
said. To an Indian that meant early July, because the full
moon occurred on the twenty-fourth in 1964. “I’m
Chimmesyan—part Haida, part Tsimshian.”

“You must be gulch-happy. What about Náhani? Have
you seen her?” As Eugene Charley pronounced the name,
he raised his upper lip like a nickering mule. He lowered
the lever of his Winchester to check the chamber. The sun
shot a brassy glint off a breeched cartridge rim.

Greg urged the man to sit down on the log and remove
his heavy pack, the weight of which he bore by the tump-
line strap across his deeply grooved forehead. He grinned
when Greg offered him a cup of coffee and a pipe stoked
with India House tobacco.

“Who is Náhani?” Greg asked.

Charley spat into the fire. “You say Náhani,” he said.
“Accent on the Ná.”

“I don’t give a rusty damn how you say it. Who the devil
is Náhani?”

“The great silver she-wolf. Queen bitch of the deadliest
wolf pack in all Canada. Is this Nakinilerak or Friday?”

“Nakinilerak.”

“They den somewhere near here. I’ve studied them for a
year or more, ever since a sweet price was put on Náhani’s
head. Those wolves are hunting somewhere south of here.
I wish to hell I knew where. When they come back, they’ll
gnaw your Chimmesyan bones. Nakinilerak is where they
winter.” With a speculative squint he probed Greg’s ex-
pression for a reaction.
tongue, a bounty hunter who builds bad reputations around predators in order to get local authorities to hike the rewards.

Nevertheless, Eugene Charley’s brief visit set in motion an exciting new trend of thought. Greg’s past experience with wolves attested that Nåhāni and her “phantom renégats,” if they existed other than in rum-soaked Carrier imaginations, weren’t as dangerous as Charley claimed—unless, of course they were indeed demented renegades, possibly an entire pack infected with sylvatic rabies, blindly revenging themselves against man. He remembered that a leading Canadian newspaper had for years published an offer: a substantial cash payment for any documented record of a wolf having attacked a human being without provocation. No one ever claimed the money. That thought was consoling on a dark and rainy night—yet rabies fell consummately into the category of provocation.
Lesson 20

The Trial Manuscript and Certification

Upon completion of Lesson 19 the student has been introduced to all of the rules of literary braille. In order to demonstrate that the rules have been mastered and to achieve national certification, the student is now asked to prepare and submit a manuscript to the Library of Congress.

20.1 In General

The certification manuscript must consist of at least thirty-five full braille pages, including preliminary pages, taken from a general reading book. Several partial pages adding up to twenty-five braille lines count as one page. If a transcription includes a dedication page that contains less than twenty-five braille lines but all other pages are full, thirty-six braille pages must be submitted.

Just as with the lessons in this instruction manual, the manuscript must be prepared using a braillewriter, a slate and stylus, or a computer using a direct-input braille program. Manuscripts prepared using translation programs, where the print material is scanned and converted to braille, are not permitted.

This is a test of the rules of literary braille format. Consequently, a manuscript prepared using textbook-style pagination will not be accepted.

All manuscripts must be submitted in single-sided embossed form. Interpoint (braille on both sides of the page) will not be accepted, nor will computer disks or simulated braille. If the copy has been produced on a computer and embossed, remove all sprocket strips, separate and collate the pages, and remove all blank pages. The manuscript should be submitted so that it is ready to read. It is not necessary, but it may be bound with a spiral binding. Thermoformed copies of the manuscript will not be accepted. It is highly recommended that, if possible, the student keep a thermoformed copy of a manuscript that was prepared on a braillewriter.

A copy of the print book used for the certification manuscript, or photocopies of the pages transcribed including all of the preliminary pages contained in the print copy, should accompany the manuscript. The print copy will be returned along with the evaluation report and the original braille pages.

20.2 Choosing a Book for the Manuscript

The book selected for the manuscript should not be so technical in nature that the student must concentrate on technicalities rather than on producing neat and accurate braille. On the other hand, it must not be so rudimentary that it does not present average vocabulary and sentence structure. The book chosen for the manuscript must contain a table of contents and use a level of vocabulary approximately equal to a high school text.

The manuscript should resemble a complete braille book as closely as possible. It should be transcribed using a 40-cell braille line and a running head. When the required number of pages have been transcribed, end at a logical place such as at the end of a
paragraph. Points will be deducted if the manuscript ends in the middle of a sentence. The words **THE END** should be placed on the last page in the prescribed manner.

### 20.3 Formatting the Book

Formatting or structuring are terms used for carefully perusing and making decisions as to how to handle the basic braille layout of the book. It is very important that this be done for every book before starting to braille. Structuring ensures consistency throughout a braille version. When structuring the book that you have chosen for the manuscript, look for such things as dialect, special typefaces, foreign words and phrases, quoted material, preliminary page setup, headings, graphs, tables, etc. Decide how you are going to handle each item *before* you start to braille. Also decide upon the running head and centered or cell-5 headings. If there are items in the book that you are not comfortable with, such as maps or flowcharts, choose a different book for the manuscript.

### 20.4 Beginning Pages

All pages at the beginning of a book, such as a dedication, acknowledgments, preface, author's note, foreword, table of contents, introduction or prologue, should be included in the braille transcription—with one exception. None of the items discussed under 19.2(g) Cover/Jacket Material are to be included in the manuscript.

The title page should be prepared following the instructions in Lesson 19 with each line centered. After certification, future title pages should be prepared at the direction of the agency for which the transcriber works.

If the student is affiliated with a transcribing group, that group's name is listed on the title page, as shown in the example in 19.2b. If the student has no group affiliation, only the transcriber's city and state are listed.

Because the manuscript is a facsimile of a complete book, place the words *In 1 Volume* instead of Volume 1 on the title page. The contents page should contain only the chapters and pages that actually appear in the thirty-five pages of the manuscript. Do not braille the entire table of contents.

A special symbols page and a transcriber's notes page should be included if appropriate.

Start the first chapter on a new braille page, and do not divide words between lines.

### 20.5 Accuracy and Neatness

A high degree of accuracy and neatness is expected of the student in the preparation of the certification manuscript. Accuracy includes a thorough and exact reproduction of the print text with respect to wording, spelling, punctuation, the correct formation of braille characters, the proper use of contractions, the correct application of all rules of braille transcribing, the proper division of words, and the use of correct braille formats. Neatness includes uniformly clear dots, evenly spaced lines, and the absence of extensive or poorly made erasures. If an error has been made in page numbering, the appropriate pages must be repeated. Manuscripts containing a repetition or omission sign will not be accepted.

Omission or repetition of part of the text is undoubtedly the most serious error that can occur because it results in material that is often incomprehensible to the reader. As
such an error is most likely to occur when the same word or words appear on two consecutive print lines, you are cautioned to guard against losing your place in the print copy, thereby either omitting the second line or repeating the first line.

20.6 Erasures

If the grader of the manuscript can feel an erasure, it will be counted as an error. Therefore, erasures should be resorted to only rarely. Follow the directions for erasing as presented in the General Course Instructions at the beginning of this book.

20.7 Editing

It is the job of the transcriber to duplicate the print copy as faithfully as possible. The transcriber is in no sense an editor and should not seek to substitute his or her judgment for that of the author as to what constitutes correct usage. This is especially true for capitalization, punctuation, and hyphenation — where there is wide variation in practice among writers and publishers. The author must be permitted his idiosyncrasies in such matters. George Bernard Shaw often used simplified spelling and omitted periods after many abbreviations.

There are occasions in print (just as in braille) when errors do occur, and these the transcriber should correct; however, this should be done with great circumspection. In correcting spelling, for example, be sure that what is shown is not simply an alternate or archaic spelling. For example, in the sentence, Teh farmer sold his milch cows, it is clear that the e and h in the word the have been reversed and should be corrected. However, although the word milch is archaic, it was the author's choice and should not be changed to milk.

20.8 Proofreading

The certification manuscript should be the work of the student and no one else. While preparing the manuscript, the pages should be proofread as they are brailled. After brailling seven to ten pages they should be proofread again. When the manuscript is finished, it is suggested that it be left alone for at least a week. The final proofreading, after the student has had a rest from the material, should expose any remaining errors. If the manuscript is generated by a computer, the pages should be carefully proofread after embossing.

The work should not be proofread by anyone other than the student. The trial manuscript is a test of the student's knowledge and ability, not of anyone else's proofreading skills.

20.9 A Letter to the Grader

A letter, in braille, to the grader from the student should accompany every manuscript. In the letter tell the grader what dictionary was used as well as anything unusual that was encountered in print such as format irregularities, dialect, or unusual foreign names. If any editing (see Editing, above) was done, this too should also be explained. Do not
include these explanations on a transcriber's notes page. The letter is not to be counted as part of the thirty-five-page manuscript. Points will not be deducted for errors in the letter.

20.10 Mailing the Manuscript

Instructions for mailing the manuscript are on page xvi of the General Course Instructions.

20.11 Grading

The following system for grading manuscripts has been adopted. A perfect manuscript will be given a grade of 100. A grade of 80 is required for certification. The list below shows how points will be deducted for errors. If the same error in the use or omission of contractions occurs consistently with respect to the same word, it will be counted only once. Format errors may sometimes be counted together as a single error. Otherwise, each error will be counted separately.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Errors and Points</th>
<th>Points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contractions omitted or misused</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characters misformed (including added or omitted dots)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incorrect division of words</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Letters inserted or omitted</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text omitted or repeated</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spacing errors</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Format irregularities</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omitted or inserted punctuation or composition signs</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erasures, if detected</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the score on the first manuscript is between 75 and 79, the student will be asked to submit a second manuscript of twenty-five pages. If a successful score has still not been reached after a third try, the student is directed to wait twelve months and retake the transcribing course before submitting a final fourth manuscript.

20.12 Appealing the Test Results

If a student feels that points were deducted erroneously, a print or braille letter should be sent to: Manager of Braille Programs, National Federation of the Blind, 1800 Johnson Street, Baltimore, MD 21230. Along with the letter, send the pertinent braille pages of the manuscript and the corresponding print pages.

20.13 Certification

Upon successful completion of the manuscript, a Certificate of Proficiency in Braille Transcribing signed by the Librarian of Congress and the Director of the National Library Service for the Blind and Physically Handicapped will be awarded. Library of Congress certification is a symbol recognized worldwide and something to be very proud of. GOOD LUCK!
Appendix A

Reading Practice

LESSON ONE

movie rerun 100 bees buzz
safe bet twelve dolls
ants make anthills 6 girls jump rope
blue umbrella 8 kettledrums boom
no vacancy all alike
walnut pancakes cute quadruplets
agreeably nice flea bite
2 yule logs 64 obsolete autos
zigzag road idiotic idea
spicy salami beetles scurry
club bylaws add two plus two
torn cuff aerial view
free giveaway wise old man
35 crazy coyotes 79 lively ladies

LESSON 2

Fans cool a big room rapidly.
Take AIRPORT ROAD six miles; turn left on MYRTLE AVE.
A kilogram equals 1,000 grams.
Melissa turns five next week; Hannah turns six.
An antonym is an opposite.
Eat a snack at 10:30.
Hey! Look at Lisa run.
A nautical mile is 6,076 feet.
We drove 595 miles.
Is MAGIC MUSIC on Bay View Road?
A black lace dress makes Jill look svelte.
I may visit my uncle on my way home.
Vicki, give me a nice juicy apple pie.
Laurie saw a five- or six-act play.

LESSON 3

Kim loves colors: rose, cobalt (blue), puce (deep purple), orange.
"'Twas a fair trade!" Sam retorts.
If I ask, respond yes/no.
Hippocrates — Greek physician.
My boss says John S ____ has a bad record.
Hannah has a six-week-old Siamese cat.
"Buzz" is onomatopoetic.

EXPRESS AISLE ONLY—PAY AT DESK
Sodium nitrate makes rocket propellant; explosives, too.
Joanna O'Reilly has a cute baby boy.
Tell me! Has Lori ____ a secret love?
Put on a happy/sad face.
Jane says David is a ____.
Pause at Mike's Place — Gas, Food — Exit 172
Twelve (12) lots sold; only six (6) left.
Rob's dog, Ali-Baba, is a 6-week-old puppy.
Dragonflies dazzle visitors at New York's Natural Museum [exhibit July 19-27].
1. Hold the handle of the suitcase so it won't drop.
2. As with all people, Adam has faults.
3. "For the love of Pete—quit that!"
4. Will gives me the willies.
5. That's very pretty, Andrea—did you color it?
6. Can a cannibal eat fruit?
7. I'd rather see Dan Rather at 7:00.
8. It's not too cold, but button Sandy's coat anyway.
9. Don't call that "can-do" guy a dodo.
10. Quiet! Quit that! It is quite late.
11. Do you have the knowledge it takes for that job?
12. GO-FOR-IT, Goofy!
13. It is likely that Jack will like that coat.
14. Jimmy Frome ran home from the pond.
15. So, let's all go visit London's Soho.
16. As soon as I can, I will make candy.
17. I see more and more Moresque designs.
18. "And for the life of me, I can't see my glasses," cries Wanda.
19. The people of the People's Republic want an equal voice.
LESSON 5

1. Why don't you wait and dig the posthole next week?
2. He can't do it without my say-so.
3. See that child? She stole my chips!
4. Shhh! Look, they still have the whiskey still out on the back forty.
5. Whether I vote or not, Whit will see victory, which will make me very happy.
6. The woman with the stethoscope is Stella's physician.
7. This is the cottage with the thatch on the roof, Matthew.
8. "Oust that bourgeois creep from my boudoir, at once!" Madame Bouley implores.
9. This is the 1st grade room—that room is for 2nd grade.
10. Which shall we have, sour pickles or sweet relish on our sandwiches?
11. "That is an out-and-out lie!" Christy shouts loudly.
12. A favorite port o' call for tour ships is St. Thomas.
13. Stillmore is a village I'll visit on my next trip.
LESSON 6

1. I can't figure out what he is saying, he mumbles so.
2. I want freedom from the daily drudgery of my job.
3. Noble got a job at the local bakery baking rolls and coffee cakes.
4. The shower water runs slower if the valve is lower.
5. Ring Madame now—tell her Edith is bringing luncheon.
6. Put the tablet on the table.
7. Herbert is a pedantic fellow.
8. We'll signal the aeroplane and give Eric warning of the storm.
9. Is the car parked outside the garage?
10. What a ghastly sight!
11. Artist, Alexis Rockman, draws lovely pictures of tropical forests.
12. Which will you have, the tuna sandwich or the beef?
13. While you are away, we will take the child skating.
14. I am surprised that you are still planning that trip.
15. This is terrible! How will we get out?
16. "Shall we waltz?" he asked softly.
17. People who are overweight need light diets and lots of exercise.
18. Following the dynamite blast, the mud oozed down the hillside.
LESSON 7

Chitchat

"Good morning, Inga. Say, thanks for sending me that letter from Virginia. How was the rest of the trip?"

"Oh, lots of fun, Ed. I took a lot of pictures. But we were so tired when we got home last night—and I'm still tired this morning!"

"Did you visit the historical sites in Maryland and Connecticut?"

"No, it was a quick trip and we'll do enough of that when Beatrice visits next year."

"Weren't you going with Connie next year?"

"Yes, but she's taking a new job in the District of Columbia, so I don't think she'll go."

"Well, tell Josh I said hello. I'm glad it was a good trip. Let's have a picture showing soon. You'll feel better when you've rested a little more."

"I'll be seeing you, Ed. I'm in a hurry now. I haven't paid all my bills yet and Josh wants his books returned this morning."
Success Story

Greg's past included peddling papers, clerking at the tobacco shop and slinging hamburgers at a fast-food spot. When he was offered a job as a cook at the up-scale Truffles Restaurant he accepted, even though he'd not heard of dishes like stuffed eggplant or cabbage braised in stock.

He left the first order of fried mushrooms and zucchini (an hors d'oeuvre that was a house special) in the deep fryer for twenty minutes. The irate customer sent the blackened, unappetizing dish back to the kitchen.

Edith (who preferred to be called Eddie), the bubbly waitress, just giggled and told Greg not to worry. When she first started waiting tables she put saccharine in the sugar bowl, mistook iced tea for lemonade, and dropped a dish of hot peach cobbler with ice cream into a customer's lap.

At last the head chef, Pierre, agreed to take Greg aside for two hours every week for cooking lessons. Now, a year later, people come from far and wide to enjoy the delicacy of the house, "Aubergine a la Greggory."
LESSON 9

Rusty

Mother often tells us of the young person who played a large part in the building of her character as a child. His name was Gaylord Everett, but everyone used his nickname, Rusty, because of his red hair. He was about ten years older than she, going to college and studying to be a doctor. He was not a worldly fellow then, but bright and of fine character with a deep belief in all things spiritual.

My grandfather was a doctor and Rusty visited frequently, riding out with grandfather in the buggy to visit the sick in the neighborhood, hoping to learn the more practical aspects of medicine. Sometimes my mother got to take part in these sojourns to outlying farms. She told us of how she'd play with the dogs in the yard or look in the barn where there were often little kittens sleeping in the hay, while grandfather and Rusty delivered a baby, set a broken bone, or treated a child with the croup.

Because of his warm smile and helping hand, Rusty was always welcome wherever he went. When he graduated from medical school and got a posting at a hospital many miles away in Somerset he rarely had time to visit. But mother never forgot the young man who, many years later, won the Nobel Prize for medicine.
LESSON 10

Welcome to the Old River Inn

The Old River Inn, located in the heart of plantation country, is an intimate guest hotel, preserving the charm of the past in harmony with the amenities and conveniences of the present. Overlooking the Frances River and surrounded by 100-year-old oaks dripping with Spanish moss, the original inn was built in 1817. Completely restored in 1995, great care has been taken to retain the historical significance of the original structure.

Guests will be met at the railroad station by a horse-drawn carriage and transported in the style of the eighteen hundreds to the inn. There they will be treated daily to a complimentary continental breakfast and a 5 o'clock wine reception. The gracious dining room features foods of the Old South. Braille menus and special menus for children are available.

Following a tour of the historic district or a business meeting, the Old River Inn offers a pleasing selection of relaxing diversions. Every room has wide-screen, color television. Downstairs soft piano music fills the lounge. Stroll the river walk in the twilight or enjoy a favorite libation and a game of skill in the inn's Billiard Room.

We will be glad to coordinate any dining reservations or arrange historic tours.
Dear Lynne,

True to my word, I am writing this letter tonight in order that it will be on its way to you tomorrow morning.

How I wish you could have been with us today! We attended the annual gymnastic exhibition at the school for the blind, and it was an experience I shall always remember. We found it necessary to be there long before two o'clock, as the good seats were almost all taken.

The beginning of the program brought an immediate response from the large audience, and we were quick to perceive the excellence of the physical training being given these young blind people. We found ourselves rejoicing in the charm of the folk dances, and I declare that I have never seen more precise calisthenics. We were much impressed with the complicated drills with wands, Indian clubs and dumbbells, and thrilled with the excitement of the races in rope climbing. Wrestling and tumbling, followed by a fascinating exhibition of swimming and diving, completed a program which was altogether amazing.

Come with us when we visit the school again; you will be as impressed as we were.

Sincerely yours,

Julia Goodfellow
Appendix B

Alphabetic Index of Braille Symbols

Alphabet and Numbers

For Braillewriter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>j</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>j</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>z</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>z</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For Slate

In the following chart, dot configurations for the slate appear as they are produced, and are thus a mirror image of the dots as they are read or produced on a braillewriter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>j</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>j</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>z</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>z</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contractions, Word Signs, and Short-Form Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Writer</th>
<th>Slate</th>
<th></th>
<th>Writer</th>
<th>Slate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>altogether</td>
<td>Writer</td>
<td>Slate</td>
<td>ch</td>
<td>Writer</td>
<td>Slate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>always</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behind</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>below</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beneath</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beside</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beyond</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ble</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blind</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braille</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cannot</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>child</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>children</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>com</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conceive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conceiving</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deceive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deceiving</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declare</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declaring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>either</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ence</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ever</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>Writer</td>
<td>Slate</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>Writer</td>
<td>Slate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oneself</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ong</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>shall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ou</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>should</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ought</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ound</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>so</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ourselves</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>some</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ount</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>spirit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>st</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>still</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>paid</td>
<td></td>
<td>such</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>part</td>
<td></td>
<td>th</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>people</td>
<td></td>
<td>that</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>perceive</td>
<td></td>
<td>the</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>perceiving</td>
<td></td>
<td>their</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>perhaps</td>
<td></td>
<td>themselves</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>question</td>
<td></td>
<td>there</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quick</td>
<td></td>
<td>these</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quite</td>
<td></td>
<td>this</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rather</td>
<td></td>
<td>those</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>receive</td>
<td></td>
<td>through</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>receiving</td>
<td></td>
<td>thyself</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rejoice</td>
<td></td>
<td>time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rejoicing</td>
<td></td>
<td>tion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>right</td>
<td></td>
<td>to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yourself</td>
<td>would</td>
<td>world</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>word</td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yourselves</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TOC -- INDEX  B - 5
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Punctuation and Composition Signs</th>
<th>Writer</th>
<th>Slate</th>
<th>Writer</th>
<th>Slate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accent symbol</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apostrophe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asterisk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bracket, opening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bracket, closing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capital indicator</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capital indicator, double</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comma</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dash</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dash, omission</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ditto sign</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ellipsis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emphasis indicator</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emphasis indicator, double</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exclamation point</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guide dot</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyphen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letter indicator</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line sign</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-Latin letter indicator</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number indicator</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omission sign</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parenthesis, opening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parenthesis, closing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>period</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>print symbol indicator</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quotation mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quotation mark, double opening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quotation mark, double closing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quotation mark, single opening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quotation mark, single closing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repetition sign</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slash</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semicolon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>termination symbol</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transcriber's note symbol, open and close</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**QUICK REFERENCE CHART**

### ALPHABET & NUMBERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>j</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>z</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PUNCTUATION

- • apostrophe
- ■ asterisk
- •••••••••• bracket, open
- •••••••••• bracket, close
- • colon
- •••••••••• comma
- •••••••••• dash
- •••••••••• omission dash
- •••••••••• ellipsis
- •••••••••• exclamation point
- •••••••••• hyphen
- •••••••••• line sign
- •••••••••• slash
- •••••••••• parentheses, open & close
- •••••••••• period
- •••••••••• question mark

### COMPOSITION SIGNS

- •• capital indicator
- •• number indicator
- •• letter indicator
- •• emphasis indicator
- •• accent symbol
- •••••••••• termination symbol

### ALPHABET CT'NS

- b but p people
- c can q quite
- d do r rather
- e every s so
- f from t that
- g go u us
- h have v very
- j just w will
- k knowledge x it
- l like y you
- m more z as
- n not

### WHOLE-WORD CT'NS

- •• child •• which
- •• shall •• out
- •• this •• still

### OK with apostrophe

- can's can't
- child's it's it'd it'll
- people's it's it'd it'll
- so's that's that'd that'll
- still's you'd you'll
- that's you're you've
- will's

### PART & WHOLE-WORD CT'NS

- •• and •• the
- •• for •• with
- •• of

### PART-WORD CT'NS

- •• ar •• ing
- •• ble •• ou
- •• ch •• ow
- •• ed •• sh
- •• en •• st
- •• er •• th
- •• gh •• wh
- •• in

### WHOLE-WORD LOWER SIGNS

- •• in
- •• enough
- •• be
- •• his
- •• was
- •• were
- •••••••••• to
- •••••••••• into
- •••••••••• by

### PART-WORD LOWER SIGNS

- •• be
- •• con
- •• dis
- •• com
- •• en
- •• in
- •••••••••• ea
- •• bb
- •• ce
- •• dd
- •• ff
- •• gg
**INITIAL-LR CT'NS**  
* Special rules apply.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cannot</th>
<th>some</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>character</td>
<td>spirit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ever</td>
<td>there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father</td>
<td>these</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>had</td>
<td>those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>here</td>
<td>through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lord</td>
<td>under</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>upon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>whose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*one</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ought</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*part</td>
<td>world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FINAL-LR CT'NS**

| ally | |
| ance | |
| ation | |
| ence | |
| ful | |
| ity | |
| less | |
| ment | |
| ness | |
| ong | |
| ound | |
| ount | |
| sion | |
| tion | |

**SHORT-FORM WORDS**  
* Special rules apply.

| about ab | above abv |
| above ac | according ac |
| *after af | afternoon afn |
| afterward afw | again ag |
| against agst | almost alm |
| already alr | also al |
| although alth | altogether alt |
| always alw | because bec |
| before bef | behind beh |
| below bel | beneath ben |
| beside bes | between bet |
| beyond bey | *blind bl |
| braaille brl | children chn |
| conceive concv | conceiving concvg |
| could cd | deceive dcv |
| deceiving dcvg | declare dcl |
| declaring dclg | either ei |
| first fst | *friend fr |
| good gd | great grt |
| herself hgrf | him hm |
| himself hmf | immediate imm |
| its xs | itself xf |
| letter lr | little ll |
| much mch | must mst |
| myself mvf | necessary nec |
| neither nei | o’clock o’c |
| oneself onef | oursleys ourvs |
| paid pd | perceive percv |
| perceiving percvg | perhaps perh |
| quick qk | receive rcv |
| receiving rcvg | rejoice rjc |
| rejoicing rjcg | said sd |
| should shd | such sch |
| themselves themvs | thyself thyf |
| today td | together tgr |
| tomorrow tm | tonight tn |
| would wd | your yr |
| yourself yrf | yourselves yrvs |

**SYMBOLS**

| cent(s) ¢ | |
| degree(s) ° | |
| ditto sign ´ | |
| dollar(s) $ | |
| foot, feet ′ | |
| fraction line / | |
| inch(es) ″ | |
| inch - abbreviation | |
| minute(s) ′ | |
| number # | |
| paragraph ¶ | |
| percent % | |
| pound(s) sterling £ | |
| pound(s) weight # | |
| second(s) ″ | |
| section § | |
| transcriber’s note | |
| symbol, open & close | |
| yen ¥ | |
ASCII Braille Chart

A

a

b

but

c

can

d

do

e

every

f

from

g

go

h

have

i

=

j

just

k

knowledge

l

like

m

more

n

not

o

people

p

q

quite

r

rather

s

so

t

that

u

us

v

very

w

will

x

it

y

you

z

as

capital indicator

, ,

,7

[ ]

,8

'(opening)

99

*(asterisk)

""

...(ellipsis)

--

(dash)

, .

italic indicator decimal point

; ;

letter indicator

, ,1

ditto (5,1)

""

double capital indicator

7'

[ ]

0'

'(closing)

'

'(apostrophe)

@ (accent symbol)

double double italic indicator

 termination symbol

1

ea

2

be

3

con

4

dis

5

en

6

to

7

were

8

his

9

in

96

into

0

was

/ st

# ble

- com

& and

( of

! the

) with

* ch child

< gh

% sh shall

? th this

: wh which

> ing

) ar

$ ed

} er

\ ou

] ow

"d day

"e ever

"f father

"h here

"k know

"l lord

"m mother

"n name

"o one

"p part

"q question

"r right

"s some

"t time

"u under

"w work

"y young

"! 5the there

"* 5ch character

"? 5th through

": 5wh where

": \ 5ou ought

": u 4-5u upon

": w 4-5w word

": ^! 4-5the these

": ^? 4-5th those

": ^: 4-5wh whose
cannot have many spirit the world their soundance less countence long ful tion any ity nation ally about above according across after afternoon afterward again against almost already also although altogether always because before behind below beneath beside braille children conceive
Appendix C

Typical and Problem Words

Syllable division is not shown for one-letter beginning or ending syllables, words that have a short form, words that reflect dialect, or multi-syllable words that are represented by whole-word contractions. In addition, the student is reminded that word division in braille is often dependent upon whether or not the word is followed by punctuation. See 2.4a(1) for comments on dictionaries. Not all dictionaries will use the word divisions that are contained in this list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aa/on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab/a/lo/nce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aban/doned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab/bé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab/bre/via/tion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab in/i/tio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about/-face</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>above/board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab/sinthe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac/cede</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac/cla/mia/tion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac/com/pa/ni/ment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac/cord/ance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>according</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>according/ly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac/count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac/e/tone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac/ed/ked/ment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acous/tic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acre/age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>across</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac/tu/al/ly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add/ed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad/den/dum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad/dict/ed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad/di/tion/al/ly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad/dress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad/e/noid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad/her/an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad/her/ed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad/her/ence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad/her/ent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad in/i/ti/um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad/just</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad nau/se/am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ado</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad/vanced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad/van/ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ae/dile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ae/gan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ae/ne/id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aer/i/al</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aer/o/dy/nam/ics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aer/o/plan/e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aes/thet/i/cal/ly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>af/fa/ble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>af/fil/i/ti/um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>af/fir/m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>af/ford/ed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>af/fric/ed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>af/ghan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>af/gre/si</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>af/hore/time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after-/dim/ner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>af/ter/ef/fect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after/math</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afternoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afternoons</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Bi/ble  
big/horn  BIGHORN
bi/na/ry  BINARY
bin/go  BINO
bin/oct/lar  BINARY
bi/no/mial  BINOMIAL
bi/part/i/san  BIPARTISAN
birth/right  BIRTH
bis/tro  BISTRO
blan/dish/ment  BLINDNESS
bleed/ing  BLEEDING
blem/ish  BLEMISH
blend  BLEND
bless  BLESS
bless/ed  BLESSED
bless/èd  BLESSED
blessed  BLESSED
blew  BLEW
blind  BLIND
blind/ed  BLIND
blind/fold  BLINDFOLD
Blind/heim  BLINDHEIM
blind/ing  BLIND
blind/ly  BLINDLY
blind/ness  BLINDNESS
blinds  BLINDS
blithe/some  BLITHE
blood/let/ter  BLOODLETTER
blos/somed  BLOSSOMED
blun/der  BLUNDER
Boer  BOER
Bo/na/parti  BONAPART
bon/er  BONER
bon/go  BONO
Boone  BOONE
bo/re/al  BOREAL
bore/dom  BORED
bos/omed  BOSOMED
Bos/ton  BOSTON
both/ered  BORED
bought  BOUGHT
bound/a/ry  BOUNDARY
bound/less  BOUNDLESS
boun/ti/ful  BOUNTIFUL
bou/ti/nier  BOUNTIFUL
bou/ti/nière  BOUNTIFULNIÈRE
braille  BRAIL
braille/writ/er  BRAILWRITER
brail/ing  BRAIL
brail/ist  BRAILIST
breathed  BREATHED
bride-to-be  BRIDE-TO-BE
Brig/ham  BRIGHAM
bright/ened  BRIGHTENED
Bright/on  BRIGHTON
brim/ful  BRIMFUL
brim/full  BRIMFULL
broth/er-in-law  BROTHER-IN-LAW
brough/am  BROHAM
bub/led  BUBLED
bur/den/some  BURDENSOME
by/gone  BYGONE
by/stand/ers  BYSTANDERS
ca/b/a/ret  CABLESAT
ca/bled  CABLE
Caen  CAEN
caec/sar/e/an  CAECAEAN
cal/is/then/ics  CALISTIC
Cal/lo/way  CALLOWAY
ca/ma/ndi/e  COMMANDER
can/cel/la/tion  CANCELLATION
can/cer  CANCE
can/di/date  CANDIDATE
cannot  CANNOT
ca/noed  CANOE
ca/noed  CANOE
ca/noed  CANOE
ca/noed  CANOE
ca/noed  CANOE
ca/noed  CANOE
ca/noed  CANOE
ca/noed  CANOE
ca/noed  CANOE
car/ib/be/an  CARIBBEAN
car/nation  CARINA
carte blanche  CARTE BLANCHE
car/si/no  CASINO
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Castle/agh</td>
<td>Child/like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cath/er/ine</td>
<td>Children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caus/ti/cal/ly</td>
<td>Child's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca/ve/at</td>
<td>Childs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce/dar</td>
<td>Child/na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce/dil/la</td>
<td>Chine/se</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce/ment</td>
<td>Chinook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cen/time</td>
<td>Chisholm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cen/ti/me/ter</td>
<td>chock/ful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce/ram/ics</td>
<td>Chos/pin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce/re/al</td>
<td>Chou En-lai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce/rise</td>
<td>Chris/tened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce/ru/le/an</td>
<td>Chtise/ful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chaise longue</td>
<td>Chtise/ful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chal/de/an</td>
<td>Chtis/e/lor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chanced</td>
<td>Chtis/e/ry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chan/cel/or</td>
<td>Chtis/e/ry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chan/cery</td>
<td>Chtis/e/ry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chan/de/lier</td>
<td>Chtis/e/ry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change/a/ble</td>
<td>Chtis/e/ry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cha/peau</td>
<td>Chtis/e/ry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chap/er/one</td>
<td>Chtis/e/ry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character/is/ti/cal/ly</td>
<td>Chtis/e/ry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cha/rade</td>
<td>Chtis/e/ry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge/a/ble</td>
<td>Chtis/e/ry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>char/gé d'af/faires</td>
<td>Chtis/e/ry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Charles/ton  | Clem/en/ceau |
Charles/town  | Clem/ent |
Cha/ryb/dis | Clem/en/tine |
chas/tise    | Chens/fe  |
châ/teau     | Chens/fe  |
Chat/ham     | Chens/fe  |
ched/dar     | Chens/fe  |
che/le/sorse | Chens/fe  |
Chel/sea     | Chens/fe  |
chem/is/try  | Chens/fe  |
che/nille    | Chens/fe  |
che/root     | Chens/fe  |
chief/tain/ess | Chens/fe  |
chif/fo/nier | Chens/fe  |
child-care   | Chens/fe  |
child/hood   | Chens/fe  |
child/ish/ness | Chens/fe  |
child/less   | Chens/fe  |
havent hav'nt
head/dress headdress
heard heard
Hed/da hed'da
hedge/row hycere
hei/nous hysics
hem/i/sphere hemispher
hence/forth hence'forth
Hen/ness/ey hence'sey
Her/cu/le/an herculan
here/about here'about
here/after here'after
he/red/i/ty he'ity
Her/e/ford here'ford
here/in/to here'in'to
her/e/sy here'sy
her/e/tic here'tic
here/to/fore here'to'fore
here/upon here'upon
here/with here'with
Her/ges/heim/er hiergesheim'er
Her/mi/o/ne her'mione
he/ro/i/cal her'oc'ycal
her/o/ism her'ism
herself her'self
hic/cup hic'cup
hid/den hid-den
hide/a/way hide'away
hi/er/ar/chy hier'archy
higgle/dy-piggle/dy higgle'dy-piggle'dy
him him
himself hims'elf
hinged hinged
hing/ing hing'ing
his/her his'sher
his/to/ry histor'y
hob/led hob'led
hob/ble/de/hoy hob'ble'dehoy
hob/by hob'by
hogs/head hog'head
hoi/ty-toi/ty hooty'tooty
Hol/lins/hed hollins'hed
ho/mo/ge/ne/i/ty homog'en'i'ty
hon/es/ty hon'esty
hon/ey hon'ey
horse/rad/ish hors'rad'ish
hos/ti/l/ty hos'til'ity
hot/house hot'hous
Hough/ton hough'ton
how/be/it how'beit
how/ev/er how'er
hub/bub hub'bul
Hu/gue/not hugg'not
hy/e/na hy'e'na
hy/pot/e/nuse hypotenuse
hy/poth/e/cary hypoth'ecary
hy/poth/e/ses hypot'esess
hys/ter/ics hyp'ter'ics
I
idea idea
ide/al/is/tic ide'al'is'tic
ide/al/ly ide'ally
ide/as ide'as
iden/ti/ty iden'ti'ty
Il/li/nois illinois
il/lus/tra/tion illu'stra'tion
im/age/ry imagery
im/ag/i/na/tion imag'ina'tion
im/bed/ded im'bed'ded
im/mi/nence im'minence
immediate immedi'ate
immediate/ly immedi'ately
immediate/ness immedi'ateness
im/mi/nence im'minence
im/par/ti/al/i/ty im'par'tial'i'ty
im/pas/sioned im'passed
im/per/me/a/ble im'per'me'a'ble
im/pinge/ment im'pinge'ment
im/pound/ed im'pound'
im/pris/on/able im'pres'sion'a'ble
im/pris/oned im'pres'soned
in/ac/es/si/ble in'ac'ess'i'ble
in/as/much in'as'much
in/between in'be'tween
in/bound in'bound
in/can/des/cent im'can'des'cent
in/clem/ent im'ple'ant
in/cli/na/tion im'cli'na'tion
in/co/her/ence im'co'her'ence
knock/out  knockout
knock-out  knockout
knot/hole  knothole
know/ing  know
knowl/edge/a/ble  knowlable
known  known
kro/ne  krone

L
lac/er/a/tion  laceration
lack/a/day  lackaday
lad/der  lader
la/dy-in-wait/ing  lady-in-waiting
lag/ard  lagger
la/i/ty  lality
lam/en/ta/tion  lamination
lanced  lanced
Lan/ce/lot  lancelot
lanc/er  lancer
land/lord  landlord
land/lub/ber  landlubber
lar/ce/ny  lacerity
la/ryn/ge/al  laryngeal
lathed  lathed
lath/ered  lathered
lath/work  lathework
laun/der/ing  laundry
lau/re/ate  laureate
Law/rence  lawrence
lay/out  layout
lead/en  leaden
lea/guer  leaguer
Le/an/der  leander
lean/to  leantoo
learned  learned
leath/er  leather
leav/en/ing  leaving
leg/ging  legging
length/en  lengthen
le/mi/ence  leminece
Len/in/grad  lengthengrad
Leroy  leroy
less  less
les/see  lesssee

les/son  lesson
Lethe  lethe
letter  let
lettered  lettered
letter/head  letterhead
letter/ing  lettering
letter/press  letterpress
letters  letters
lev/er  lever
lev/er/age  leverage
Le/ver Broth/ers  lever brothers
Lew/ton  lewton
Li/be/ri/an  libyan
lied  lied
life/like  lifelike
life/time  lifetime
li/geoance  ligeance
light/head/ed  lightheaded
like/a/ble  likable
likes  likes
lime/ade  limeade
line/age  [alignment] lineage
lin/e/age  [ancestry] lineage
lin/e/a/ment  limage
lin/e/ment  limage
lin/en  linen
lin/ger  linger
lin/ge/ric  ligeoric
lin/guist  linguist
li/on/ess  liaison
li/on/et  lionet
lis/some/ness  lissome
lis/ten/er  listener
lithe/some/ness  litsome
littler  littler
Little Rock  little rock
Littleton  littleton
liv/ery  livery
loathed  loathed
Loch Ness  loch ness

TOC -- INDEX
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lo/co/weed</th>
<th>man/like</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>loft/i/ness</td>
<td>many/fold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>log/a/rithm</td>
<td>many-sid/ed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>log/ger</td>
<td>mar/a/sch/i/no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lon/don/er</td>
<td>ma/raud/er</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lone/some</td>
<td>mar/ble/ized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lone/som/est</td>
<td>mar/chion/ess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lon/gev/i/ty</td>
<td>Mar/gue/rite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long/hand</td>
<td>Ma/rie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lon/gi/tude</td>
<td>ma/rine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look/out</td>
<td>mar/i/on/ette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lord/ing</td>
<td>mar/i/time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lord/ship</td>
<td>ma/rooned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lou/is Braille</td>
<td>mar/riage/a/ble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low-spir/it/ed</td>
<td>mar/tin/gale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luft/waf/fe</td>
<td>mast/head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lug/gage</td>
<td>mathe/ics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lunch/eon/ette</td>
<td>mat/i/nee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ly/ing-in</td>
<td>Mat/thew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Mauguam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mac/a/ro/ni</td>
<td>maun/der/ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mac/ca/be/an</td>
<td>may/be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mac/e/do/nia</td>
<td>Ma/Well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma/chin/ery</td>
<td>Mc/Com/mack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mack/i/naw</td>
<td>Mc/Con/nell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mad/dened</td>
<td>me/an/der/ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mae/nad</td>
<td>mean/time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mag/go</td>
<td>mecca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mag/is/te/rial</td>
<td>me/dal/lion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma/ha/ra/jah</td>
<td>me/dle/some</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma/ha/ra/ni</td>
<td>me/di/a/tion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mah-jongg</td>
<td>me/di/ic/ly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>main/stay</td>
<td>me/di/ic/o/opi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>main/te/nance</td>
<td>me/di/ic/o/phy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make-be/lieve</td>
<td>me/di/ic/o/rid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mal/e/dic/tion</td>
<td>Med/i/ter/ra/ne/an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mal/in/get/er</td>
<td>meg/a/phone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mal/le/a/ble</td>
<td>meg/a/phon ed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man/age/a/ble</td>
<td>me/me/no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man/da/rin</td>
<td>mem/o/ran/dum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man/date</td>
<td>méc/nage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man/dra /ke</td>
<td>me/nag/er/ie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man/eat/er</td>
<td>me/nal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**M**

| Mac/Con nell | me/nag/er/ie |
| Mc/Com/ack | me/nag/er/ie |
| Mac/a/ro/ni | me/nag/er/ie |
| Ma/Well | me/nag/er/ie |
| maun/der/ing | me/nag/er/ie |
| may/be | me/nag/er/ie |
| Mauguam | me/nag/er/ie |
| maun/der/ing | me/nag/er/ie |
| M | me/nag/er/ie |
par/ti/tion  PAIION
par/took  PAKUK
par/tridge  PRIDGE
part-time  PATIM
par/ve/nu  PARVEX
pas/sion/less  PASSIONLESS
pass/word  PASSW
pas/tel  PAST
pa/thet/i/cal/ly  PATICLY
pa/tience  PATIENCE
pa/tron/ess  PATRONESS
peace/a/ble  PEACEABLE
pa/ver/ty  PARKETY
pa/ver/ed  PAVED
pa/per/ly  PERL
pa/ver/ment  PARMENT
pact  PACT
per/i/ne/al  PERNIAL
per/i/ne/um  PERNIUM
pe/ri/od/ic  PERIODIC
per/i/to/ne/um  PERTONEUM
per/i/ti/nac/i/ty  PERTINACITY
per/i/tent  PERTENT
per/i/ne/um  PERNIUM
per/i/ne/al  PERNIAL
per/i/ne/um  PERNIUM
per/i/ne/um  PERNIUM
per/i/ne/um  PERNIUM
per/i/ne/um  PERNIUM
per/i/ne/um  PERNIUM
roust/about  rh/2ab
rout  rh/t
roux  rh/x
rubbed  rh/x
rud/der  rh/x
ru-di-men/t/y  rh-di-ten
ru/fi/an  rh-3
ru/mi/nant  rh-ni-3nt
run/about  rh-r
ruth/less/ness  rhu-3nt

S
sab/bat/i/cal  sa-sa-3cal
sac/cha/rine  sa-sa-ren
Sac/ra/men/to  sa-sa-yen-to
saf/flow/er  sa-3low-
said  sa-
Sa/id [name]  sa-ing
saint/hood  san-3hood
sal/a/man/der  sa-lam&
sale/a/ble  sa-3le-
Sal/ly  sa-
salt/works  sa-lt-w3s
san/dal  sa-
san/gui/nary  san-gu-3ry
sar/co/ma  sa-
sa/rong  sa-
sar/sa/pil/la  sa-sa-pil-la
Sat/ur/day  sa-tur-
sav/age/ry  sa-v3ger-
saw/horse  sa-horse-
say-so  sa-
scab/bi/ness  sa-
sca/fold/ing  sa-
sca/val/ous  sa-
Scan/di/na/vian  sa-
sca/th/less  sa-
sce/nar/io  sa-
sce/nry  sa-
schism  sa-
scho/la/tic  sa-
schoon/er  sa-
scho/tishe  sa-
sce/nce  sa-
sclero/sis  sa-
scoff  sa-
scone  sa-
sco/n/drel  sa-
scribbled  sa-
scri/bed  sa-
scuff  sa-
scuffed  sa-
scythe  sa-
sea  sea
sea/far/ing  sa-
sea-green  sa-
sea/man  sa-
sé/ance  sa-
searched  sa-
seas  sa-
sea/shore  sa-
sea/soned  sa-
Se/at/tle  sa-
se/ced/ed  sa-
se/dan  sa-
se/date  sa-
sed/a/tive  sa-
sed/en/tary  sa-
sed/i/ment  sa-
se/di/tion  sa-
se/duc/tion  sa-
se/du/ous  sa-
se/nil/i/ty  sa-
seethe  sa-
seined  sa-
self-con/fi/dent  self-con-fi-den-
sel-fin/duced  self-fin-duc-
sell/out  sel-
sem/i-invalid  semi-invalid
Sem/i/nole  sem-
se/nes/cence  se-
se/nile  se-
se-nil/i/ty  se-
se/flower  se-
sen/tenced  se-
Sen/tal/ity  se-
se/pa/ra/tion  se-
se/ren/i/ty  se-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sun/day</td>
<td>SUN·DAY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sun/der</td>
<td>SUN·ER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su/pe/ri/or/i/ty</td>
<td>SUPERIOR·ITY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su/pi/na/tion</td>
<td>SUPERION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su/pine/ness</td>
<td>SUPERI·ES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sur/name</td>
<td>SUR·NE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sur/re/al/ist</td>
<td>SUR·AL·IK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sus/tained</td>
<td>SUS·TAIN·ED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sus/te/nance</td>
<td>SUS·TANCE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swas/ti/ka</td>
<td>SWAS·TI·KA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swas/ti/kaed</td>
<td>SWAS·TI·KAED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swathed</td>
<td>SWA·THED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swe/den</td>
<td>SWEDEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sWITH/er</td>
<td>SWITH·ER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swooned</td>
<td>SWOONED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sword</td>
<td>SWORD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sy/ringe</td>
<td>SY·RINGE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

T

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tab/a/ret</td>
<td>TAB·RET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tab/leau</td>
<td>TAB·LEAU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta/bled</td>
<td>TAB·LED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tab/let</td>
<td>TAB·LET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tal/ly</td>
<td>TAL·LY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tal/ly/ho</td>
<td>TAL·LY·HO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta/man/dua</td>
<td>TAM·DU·A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tam/a/rack</td>
<td>TAM·ARK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tam/ma/ny</td>
<td>TAM·MA·NY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tan/dem</td>
<td>TAN·DEM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta/ran/tu/la</td>
<td>TANTULA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-bone</td>
<td>T-BONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tea</td>
<td>TE·A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach/er</td>
<td>TEACH·ER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tea/cup</td>
<td>TEA·CUP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear</td>
<td>TEAR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teas</td>
<td>TEAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tea/spoon/fuls</td>
<td>TEA·SPOON·FULS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tea/time</td>
<td>TEA·TIME</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ted/die</td>
<td>TED·DIE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te/di/ous/ness</td>
<td>TEO·OUS·NESS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teethed</td>
<td>TEETHED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tel/e/phone</td>
<td>TELEPHONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tel/e/phoned</td>
<td>TELEPHONED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tem/per/a/ment/ial</td>
<td>TEM·PER·A·MENTIAL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
wharf/iner  wharf/iner
what/ever  what/ever
wheel/wright  wheel/wright
whence  whence
when/ever  when/ever
where/abouts  where/abouts
where/as  where/as
where/by  where/by
where/e'er  where/e'er
where/fore  where/fore
where/in/to  where/in/to
where/of  where/of
where/upon  where/upon
where/with/al  where/with/al
wheth'er  wheth'er
which/ev'er  which/ev'er
whis/tled  whis/tled
white/ness  white/ness
whith/er  whith/er
wound/ed  wound/ed
wreathed  wreathed
wright  wright
writhed  writhed
wrong/ed  wrong/ed
wrought  wrought
Wy/an/dotte  Wy/an/dotte

X

X-ray  x-ray
xy/lophone  xylophone

Y

yeared  yeared
Yeats  Yeats
yes/ter/day  yes/ter/day
Yid/dish  Yid/dish
yo/ghurt  yo/ghurt
you'd  you'd
you'll  you'll
you'n  you'n
young/ster  young/ster
Youngs/town  Youngs/town
your  your
you're  you're
yours  yours
yourself  yourself
yourselves  yourselves
you's  you's
you've  you've

Z

zeal/ot  zeal/ot
ze/nith  zenith
ze/ro  zero
zith/er  zith/er
zone  zone
zoned  zoned
zuc/chi/ni  zuc/chi/ni
Index

A (word), 12.1b
joined to and, for, of, the, with, 4.3
Ab, as name, 12.2
ab, short-form, 11.1
Abbreviations, 13.2
acronyms, 13.4
apostrophe in, 15.8a
be, con, dis, and com in, 7.9, 13.2c
biblical, 17.5b
capitalization in, 2.4b(2), 13.2, 13.2a
for coinage, weight, and measure, 13.1b
compound, 13.2a
connecting words in, 13.2b
contractions used in, 13.2c
dates, 13.8
of mails, 13.2a
enclosed in punctuation, 13.2g
initials, 13.4
initials, personal, 13.3
letter indicator in, 13.2, 13.2b, 13.2d
non-Latin letters in, 13.2h
one-cell, whole-word contractions in, 13.2c
order of, 13.2
not followed by period, 13.2d
plural, 15.8a
postal abbreviations, 13.2c, 19.2b(11)
punctuation within, 13.2
in references, 17.5
of saint and street, 5.3e
and short-forms, 13.2d
single letter, 12.1f
slash in, 13.2f
spacing of, 13.2
in special typeface, 15.2
of states on title page, 19.2b(11)
word endings in, 13.2b
Accent symbol, 16.1
Accented letters in English texts, 16.1
Accolades, 17.6c, 19.2b(2)
Acknowledgments, 19.2b(4), 19.3c
Acronyms, 13.4
Adjectives, 2.4a(3), 6.6b
æ (ae), 6.1d
after, short-form, special rules for, 11.5
Al, as name, 12.2
al, short-form, 11.1
ally, 10.1a. See also Final-letter contractions
as word, 10.1b

Alphabet, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5
Alphabet contractions, 4.2
with slash, 4.2c
Alphabets, Non-Latin, 16.7
Alternative contractions, choice between,
6.5
preference given to ane and ence, 10.1d(3)
preference given to and, for, of, the, with,
6.5b, 7.3e
preference given to ation over tion,
10.1d(1)
preference given to ence followed by d or r,
10.1d(3)
preference given to one-cell contractions
over two-cell contractions, 9.3
preference given to other one-cell
contractions over double-letter and
ea contractions, 8.2h
preference given to contraction
reflecting correct pronunciation, 9.5
preference given to contraction that
saves most space, 4.5c, 5.3c, 6.5a
preference given to contraction that
preserves usual form of base word,
6.3, 7.7, 8.2b, 10.1d, 10.1d(2), 11.6
American Printing House for the Blind, xii
Ampersand (&), 13.1b
ance, 10.1a. See also Final-letter contractions
preference given to use of, 10.1d(3)
and, for, of, the, with, 4.3, 4.4
a, in conjunction with, 4.3
in hyphenated compound words, 4.3b
italics with, 15.1c(3)
joined, not joined, 4.3, 4.3a
as part-word contractions, 4.4
preference for, 6.5b, 7.3e
with punctuation or composition signs,
4.3a
as whole-word contractions, 4.3
Anglicized words and phrases, 7.2c, 16.2, 16.5
accent symbol used in, 16.1
defined, 16.2
Apostrophe, 3.2
before capital letters and fully capitalized
words, 3.2a
with child, shall, this, which, out, and
still, 5.2a
with com, 7.6

TOC -- INDEX
before final-letter contractions, 10.1e
missing letter, represented by, 2.4a, 12.1d(2)
with letters, 12.1d(2)
with one-cell, whole-word contraction, 4.2a
Appendixes, 19.8
ar, 6.1
exception to rule on prefixes, 6.1a
ar, ed, er, gh, ow, ble, and ing, 6.1
Arabic numbers. See Numbers
Asterisk,
used to show break in text, 19.1c
used to show omission of words, 15.3
as reference marker 17.2, 17.3
At (@) symbol, 13.1b
ation, 10.1d(1). See ALSO Final-letter
contractions
Attributions and credit lines, 3.4, 13.9a, 17.6
Author, other books by, 19.2h(1)
Author's name,
placement of in credit lines, 17.6a-b
on title page, 19.2b(T)

BANA. See Braille Authority of North America
bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, ea, 8.2. See ALSO Lower-
sign contractions
in base words, 8.2b, 8.2d
with composition signs, 8.2a
in compound words, 8.2c
in diphthongs and trigraphs, 8.2g
preference given to other one-cell
contractions, 8.2h
with prefix, 8.2e
with punctuation, 8.2a
with suffix, 8.2d
be. See ALSO Lower-sign contractions; be,
con, dis
as part-word contraction, 7.1, 7.5
as whole-word contraction, 7.1, 7.2, 7.2b
be, con, dis, 7.5. See ALSO Lower-sign
contractions
in abbreviations, 7.9
in divided words, 7.5a
in names, 7.8
with punctuation, 7.5c
with slash, 7.5c
in syllabicated words, 7.5c
as last syllable of word, 7.5b
with to, into, and by, 8.1d
Biblical references, 17.5b
Bibliographies, 19.8
Blank lines in text, 19.1c
ble, 6.1, 6.2
blind, short-form, special rule for, 11.5
Boldface type. See Italics
Brackets, 3.3
abbreviations enclosed in, 13.2g
enclosing footnotes, 17.4a
before italic sign, 15.1a(2)
enclosing letters or portions of words, 15.11
next to to, into, or by, 8.1c
Braille alphabet, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5
Braille Authority of North America (BANA), xi, xii, 16.1[note]
Braille book format, 19.1
accolades, 17.6c, 19.2h(2)
acknowledgments, 19.2h(4), 19.3c
appendixes, 19.8
author's personal acknowledgments, 19.3c
beginning of text, 19.3b
bibliographies, 19.8
blank lines, 19.1c
breaks in text, 19.1c
captions, 19.1b
chapter titles, 19.6
collections page, 19.2f
cover/jacket material, 19.2g
dedication, 19.2c
diagrams, 19.1a
disclaimer, 19.2h(3)
division into volumes, 19.7
dedication, 19.2c
division into volumes, 19.7
end-of-volume indication, 19.9
epiphrases, 17.6b, 19.2h(5), 19.5
foreword, 19.3c
glossaries, 19.8
headings, 17.1
illustrations, 19.1a
indexes, 19.2f(1), 19.8
introduction, 19.3c
maps, 19.1a
other books by author, 19.2h(1)
pagination, 17.7, 17.7a-b, 19.2a, 19.3a
parts, broken into, 19.5
pictures, 19.1a
poetry, 19.2h(5)
preface, 19.3c
preliminary pages, 19.2, 19.4
prologue, 19.3c
reviews, 19.2h(2)
runtime heads, 17.1d

Index-2
special symbols page, 19.2d
  table of contents, 19.2f
  text, first page of, 19.3b
  title page, 19.2b
  transcriber's notes page, 19.2e
  volume size and division, 19.7
Braille cell, 1.1
  spacing between, 2.3
Braille computer programs, xiii, 1.2, 20.1
Braille Enthusiast's Dictionary, 4.5d, 6.1f
Braille eraser, xii
Braille Formats: Principles of Print to Braille
  Transcription, xi
  inconsistent with EBAE, xi, 2.2
  glossaries and indexes, 19.8
  pagination, 17.7b, 19.2a[note]
  poetry, 18.2b[note]
  preliminary pages, 19.2a[note]
  special formats, 18.1
  tables, 18.4
  title page, authors on, 19.2b(2)
  title page, copyrights, 19.2b(7)
Braille, Louie, 1.5
Braille paper, xii
Braillewriter, xii, xiii, 1.2
Breaks in text, 19.1c
British coinage, 13.1b, 13.1g, 14.4b
Bullets, 18.3
  in abbreviations, 7.9
  with slash, 7.6
Comma, 2.3
  effect on number sign, 2.6a
Composition signs,
  accent symbol, 16.1
  capital indicators (single and double), 2.1
  definition of, 2.1
  emphasis indicator, 15.1
  number indicator, 1.6
  order of, with punctuation marks, 15.7

Capitalized portions of words, 15.8a
Capitalized words, 2.1
  apostrophe in, 3.2a
Captions, 19.1b
Cardinal numbers, 1.6. SEE ALSO Numbers
  cc, 8.2. SEE ALSO bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, ea
Cell-5 headings, 17.1b
Centered headings, 17.1a
Centering of headings and lines, xiv
Certification. SEE Trial manuscript
textbook formatting, 17.7b
ch, sh, th, wh, ou, st, 5.1, 5.3
Chapter, beginning of, 19.6
Chapter titles, 19.6
child, shall, this, which, out, still, 5.1, 5.2
  with apostrophe, 5.2a
Citations, reference, 17.5a
Clock time, 14.7
Coinage, 13.1g, 14.4b
Coined words, 16.6b
Colon, 2.3
  in clock time, 14.7a
  effect on number indicator, 2.6a
Columnar format, 18.3
Columns, 18.3
  lists, 18.3a
  side-by-side, 18.3b
com, 7.1, 7.6
  in abbreviations, 7.9
  with slash, 7.6
Comma, 2.3
  effect on number sign, 2.6a
California Transcribers and Educators of the
  Visually Handicapped (CTEVH), 16.1[note], 18.1
Capital letter, preceded by apostrophe, 3.2a
Capital letters, 2.1
  apostrophe preceding, 3.2a
  small capital letters, 15.2
  before or after to, into, by, 8.1b
Capital indicator, single and double, 2.1
  and italic indicator, 15.1a
  repeated after slash, 3.6a
Capitalization,
  of a, i, or o, as words, 4.2d
  of abbreviations, 13.2
  at beginning of paragraph, 2.2
  of chapter titles, 19.6
  of compound words, 2.4b(2)
on contents pages, 19.2f, 19.2f(1)
of italicized words, 15.1a
of names, 2.1
of one-cell, whole-word contractions, 4.2d
of roman numerals, 14.1a
of short-form words, 1.7f
of titles, subtitles, and authors' names on
title pages, 19.2b(3)

TOC -- INDEX
terminated by slash, 3.6a
termination symbol, 15.6
with to, into, by, 8.1b
with whole-word lower sign contractions, 7.2a
Compound hyphenated words, 2.4b
be, con, and dis in, 7.5c
ble and ing in, 6.2
capitalized, 2.4b(2)
with child, shall, this, which, out, still, 5.2b
divided between lines, 2.4b(1)
emphasized, 15.1a-b
initial-letter contractions used in, 9.1a
with one-cell whole-word contractions, 4.2b
part-word lower sign in, 7.4
portions of, capitalized or italicized, 15.6
short-forms used in, 11.4
with to, into, and by, 8.1c
whole-word lower signs in, 7.2b
Compound (solid) words,
ar, ed, er, gh, ow, ble, ing used in, 6.1c
bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, ea used in, 8.2e
ch, sh, th, wh, ou, st used in, 5.3b
contractions used in, 4.5b
disconnected, 2.4c
en used in, 7.3c
short forms used in, 11.4

Computer Braille Code, xii, 14.9

Computer programs. See Braille computer programs
con, 7.1, 7.5. See also be, con, dis
in short-form words, 11.3a
as word, 7.5d
Consonants pronounced separately, 6.1f
Contents, table of, 19.2f
in trial manuscript, 20.2
Contractions, 4.1, 4.5. Individual contractions indexed alphabetically.
in abbreviations, 13.2c
alphabet, 4.2
in anglicized words, phrases, and proper names, 16.1, 16.5
choice between. See Alternative contractions
in compound words, 4.5b
when consonants pronounced separately, 6.1f
defined, 4.1
in dialect, 2.5b(3), 16.6a

in digraphs and trigraphs, 6.1d, 8.2g, 9.4, 10.1f
in diphthongs, 6.1d, 7.3d, 8.2g
in English interspersed with foreign words (dialect), 16.6a
in English names in foreign phrases, 16.3a(2)
final letter, 10.1. See also Final-letter contractions
in foreign words or names in distinctive typeface, 16.3a
in foreign words or names in regular typeface, 16.3b
general rules for use of, 4.1, 4.5, 6.1a[note], 6.3
initial letter, 9.1. See also Initial-letter contractions
in lisped words, 12.5b(2)
lower-signs, general rule, 7.4
See also Lower sign contractions
in made-up words, 16.6b
in names. See Names
one-cell, whole-word, 4.2
in ordinal endings, 5.5, 14.1e
part word. See Part-word contractions
in postal codes, 13.7
preferred. See Alternative contractions and pronunciation. See Pronunciation
in short-form words. See Short-form words
single-letter. See Whole-word contractions, one-cell
with slash, 4.2c, 4.3c, 5.4
in specialized terminology, 16.6c
in stammered words, 12.5a
standing alone, 6.4
in stressed English syllables, 16.1
in syllabicated words, 4.2b
falling in one syllable, 6.1a[note], 4.5a
in telephone numbers, 13.6
in trigraphs, 6.1d, 8.2g, 10.1f
to preserve usual form of base word, 6.3
whole word. See Whole-word contractions

Copyright information, on title pages, 19.2b(8)
Copyright (©) symbol, 13.1b
Correspondence, letter format, 13.9
Corrupted foreign words, 16.6a
Cover material, 19.2g
Credit lines (attributions), 17.6
Crosshatch (#) symbol, 13.1b

Dagger. See Asterisk
Dash, 2.5
with attributions, 3.4
with com, 7.6
with composition signs, 2.5b
double (omission) dash, 3.5
print dashes (en and em), 2.6c
division between lines, 2.5c
foreign conversation, enclosing, 16.4a
hyphen, distinguished from, 2.5
with inclusive numbers, 2.6c
in incomplete sentence, 2.5, 2.5a
italicized passage, beginning and ending, 15.1b
with number indicator, 2.6a
omission (double), 3.5
with other punctuation, 2.5c, 3.4
following reference indicator, 17.3
with roman numerals, 14.1b
spacing of, 2.5a
in speech hesitation, sound imitation, 12.5b(1)
in sports, scores, votes, etc., 2.6a
next to to, into, or by, 8.1c
Dates, 13.8
dd, 8.2. SEE ALSO bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, ea
used in preference to had, 9.3
Decimal coinage, 14.4b
Decimal point, 14.4
in reference numbers, 17.5a
Dedication, 19.2c
Definite points of time, 14.7a
Diacritical marks, 16.1[note]
Diagrams, 19.1a
Dialect, 9.1a, T2.5b, 12.5b(3)
Dictionary, 2.4a, 2.4a(1), 2.4a(3)
Digraphs, 6.1d, 9.4, 10.1f
Dimensions, 14.5
Diphthongs, 6.1d, 7.3d, 8.2g
Direct input programs. SEE Braille computer programs
dis, 7.1, 7.5. SEE ALSO Be, con, dis as word, 7.5d
Disclaimer, 19.2h(3)
Disconnected compound words, 2.4c
Displayed material. SEE Quoted material
Ditto sign, 13.5
Division into volumes, 19.7
Division of words at end of line, 2.4a,
12.1g(2) [note]
Division of words between pages, 2.4a,
12.1g(2) [note]

Division of words into syllables. SEE Syllabicated words
Dollar sign ($), 13.1b, 13.1c, 14.4b
Dots, indicating break in text, 19.1c
indicating omitted letters, 15.4
Double capital indicator. SEE Capital indicator
Double dagger. SEE Asterisk
Double (omission) dash, 3.5
Double quotation marks. SEE Quotation marks
Double-letter contractions, 8.2. SEE ALSO bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, ea
Drills, preparation of, xiii
ea, 8.2. SEE ALSO bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, ea
beginning a base word, 8.2b-c
preserving the usual form of word, 8.2b
EBAE. SEE English Braille American Edition ed, 6.1
as abbreviation or name, 6.4
Editing of text, 20.7
Electronic Addresses, 14.9
Ellipsis, 15.1e, 15.3, 15.3a-c
E-mail addresses, 14.9
Emphasis indicator
Emphasis indicator, 15.1
with a, and, for, of, the, with, 15.1c(3)
used for boldface type, 15.1
used for small capital letters, 15.2
with chapter titles or headings, 19.6
in compound words, 15.1a
on contents pages, 19.2f
in divided words or numbers, 15.1a(1)
double, 15.1b
with ellipses, 15.3b
in hyphenated compound words, 15.1b
with lower signs, 15.1c(2)
with paragraph headings, 17.1c
with portions of numbers, 15.8d
with portions of words, 15.8b
with proper nouns (ships, books, etc.), 15.1f
with punctuation, 15.1a(2)
with series of titles, 15.1f
with single letters, 15.1g
with slash, 15.1a
with termination sign, 15.6
with to, into, by, 8.1b, 15.1c(2)
used for underlining, 15.1
not regarded as upper sign, 15.1c
summary of use, 15.1j
en. SEE ALSO Lower-sign contractions
as part-word contraction, 7.1, 7.3, 7.3a.
in contact with upper dot, 7.4
in syllabicated words, 12.6a(1)
as whole-word contraction, 7.2
in anglicized phrases, 7.2c
ence, 10.1a. SEE ALSO Final-letter contractions
followed by d or r, 10.1d(3)
preference given for use of, 10.1d(3)
End-of-volume indication, 19.9
English Braille American Edition, xi, xii
English interspersed with foreign words, 16.6a
English, Old and Middle, 16.8
enough, 7.2. SEE ALSO en
Enrollment in course, xii
Epigraphs, 17.6b, 19.2h(5), 19.5
er, 6.1
as vocal sound, 6.4
Erasers. SEE Braille erasers
Erasures, xv, 20.6
Errors, print, 20.7
erly, words ending in, 6.1b
ess, words ending in, 10.1d
Exclamation point, 2.3
in Spanish, 16.4b
Exercises, preparation of, xiv
ff, 8.2. SEE ALSO bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, ea
Final-letter contractions, 10.1a
with apostrophe or hyphen, 10.1c
with digraphs and trigraphs, 10.1f
with prefix, 10.1c
in syllabicated words, 12.6a(1)
First page of text, 19.3b
Footnotes, 17.4
indicators, 14.6, 17.3
long, 17.4b
notes in note section, 17.4c
paragraphs with multiple, 17.4c
short, 17.4a
for, 4.3, 4.4 SEE ALSO and, for, of, the, with
Foreign names in English text, 16.3a(1)
Foreign ordinal endings, 14.1c
Foreign punctuation marks, 16.4
Foreign single letters, 16.3b(2)
Foreign words, 16.3
corrupted, 16.6a
defined, 16.2
in distinctive typeface, 16.3a
diving, 16.3c
in quotation marks, 16.3a
in regular typeface in English text, 16.3b
spelled like English words, 16.3b(1)
Foreign-language texts, 16.1[note]
Foreword, 19.3c
Format,
for braille books, 19.
for columns, 18.3
for drills and exercises, xiii
for letters of correspondence, 13.9
for lists, 18.3a
for manuscript, 20.3
for menus, 18.6
for notes, 17.4
for outlines, 18.5
for poetry, 18.2
for recipes, 18.7
for tables, 18.4
Formatting, 20.3
textbooks, 17.7b
Fractions (fraction line), 14.2
joined to other numbers, 14.3
Freestanding portions of words. SEE Portions of words
friend, short-form, special rule for, 11.5
Front matter, 19.2h
ful, 10.1a. SEE ALSO Final-letter contractions
ful and full, 10.1d(2)

gg, 8.2. SEE ALSO bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, ea
gh, 6.1
Glossaries, 19.8
Grading,
of exercises, xv
of trial manuscript, 20.11
Greek,
italics in, 16.7b
letter signs in, 16.7b
letters, 16.7a-b
to, into, and by with, 16.7b
words and passages, 16.7b
Guide dots,
on contents page, 19.2f(1)
in tables, 18.4

Hard copy braille, xiii
Headings,
capitalization of, 17.1
cell-5, 17.1b
how to center, xiv
centered, 17.1a
chapter, 17.1a, 19.6
ity, 10.1a. See also Final-letter contractions

Jacket material, 19.2g

know, 9.1, 9.2a
Koran, references to, 17.5b

Legal terminology, 16.6c
less, 10.1a. See also Final-letter contractions
as word, 10.1b

Letter format (correspondence), 13.9
Letter indicator, 12.1, 12.1a
before Ab and Al, as names, 12.2
with abbreviations, 13.2, 13.2d, 13.2g
with capital letters, 12.1a
with foreign ordinal endings, 14.1e
in foreign words in distinctive typeface, 16.3a
in foreign words in regular typeface, 16.3b
with Greek and other non-Latin words or passages, 16.7e
before letters with numbers, 12.3
before letters with punctuation, 12.1d
in numbers joined to words, 12.3c
in reference numbers, 17.5a
in roman numerals, 14.1a
before short forms, 12.2
with slash, 13.2f
summary of usage, 12.4

Letters,
with apostrophe, 12.1d(2)
contractions with, 12.1c
enclosed, 12.1g(1)-(2)
enlarged at beginning of paragraph, 2.2
foreign, 16.3b(2)
in italics, 12.1g(1), 15.1g
joined to other letters or words, 12.1d(1)
with numbers, 12.3
omitted, 12.1d(2)
in outlines and lists, 12.1g(2)
plural, 12.1d(2)
with punctuation, 12.1d, 12.1g(1)
in quotation marks, 15.1g
with roman numerals, 14.1d-e
representing unknown quantities and shapes, 12.1e
with slash, 12.1d(3)
that mean words, 12.1b

Letters (correspondence), 13.9
Line length, xiv

Line symbol, 18.2a
Lisped words, 12.5b, 12.5b(2)
Lists, 18.3a
Lower-sign rule, 2.5c, 7.2a, 7.4, 8.1d
not applied to italic sign, 15.1c
Lower-sign contractions, 7.1
part-word. See also bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, ea; in; en; be, con, dis; com
dividing words containing, 7.4
with emphasis indicator, 15.1c(1)
in syllabicated words, 12.6a(1)
two or more in succession, 7.4
whole-word. See also in, enough, be, his, was, were; to, into, by
with emphasis indicator, 15.1c(2)
with punctuation signs, 7.2a

Mac or Mc, as part of name, 7.8
Made-up words, 16.6b
Mailing of braille materials, xvi
Manuscript. See Trial manuscript
Maps, 19.1a
Margins, xiv
Mathematical signs of operation, 14.5
Measurements, times sign in, 14.5
Medical terminology, 16.6c
ment, 10.1a. See also Final-letter contractions
Menus, 18.6
Middle English, 16.8
Mixed numbers, 14.3, 14.4a
Music Braille Code, xii

Names, 11.9
Ab and Al, when letter sign used with, 12.2
apostrophe in, 7.8
be, con, dis in, 7.8
capitalization of, 2.1. See also Small capital letters
contractions used in, 4.2, 5.2c, 7.8, 8.1f, 9.6, 11.9 (summary)
difficulty in pronunciation. See Pronunciation
Ed, 6.1, 6.4
emphasized, 15.1, 15.1f, 15.1j
en not used in, 7.2c
English, in foreign phrases, 16.3a(2)
foreign, in English text, 16.3a(1)
initial-letter contractions in, 9.1a, 9.6

Index-8

TOC -- INDEX
initials, 13.3
*Mac* or *Mc*, as part of, 7.8
one-cell, whole-word used for, 4.2
proper nouns (ships, books, etc.), 15.1,
15.1f, 15.1j
short forms used in, 11.8
*st* contraction in, 6.4
summary of contractions used in, 11.9
National Braille Association (NBA), [6.1][note],
18.1
textbook formatting certification, 17.7b
National Federation of the Blind (NFB), xii, xiv,
xvi
*Nemeth Braille Code for Mathematics and
Science Notation*, xii, 14.5
ness, 10.1a. SEE ALSO *Final-letter contractions*
Non-Latin alphabets, 16.7
Non-Latin letter indicator, 13.2h, 16.7a
Notes, 17.4. SEE ALSO *Transcriber’s notes*
umbered or lettered, 17.2
Number indicator, 1.6
with *to*, *into*, *by*, 8.1b
terminated, 2.6a, 12.3b
Numbering of pages. SEE *Pagination*
Numbers, 1.6
with apostrophe, 3.2b
arabic, on title page, 19.2b(12)
cardinal, 1.6
connecting, 2.6c
contractions following, 6.1g
divided at end of line, 2.6b
fractions, 14.2
inclusive, 2.6e
italicized and divided between lines,
15.1a(1)
with letters, 12.3b
mixed, 14.3
with ordinal endings, 5.5, 12.3b, 14.1e
partially emphasized, 15.8d
plural, 12.3a
with punctuation, 2.6
with slash (not fraction line), 14.2b
symbol (*#*), 13.1b
Number-word combinations, 2.6b, 12.3c

*O* (word), 12.1b
Oblique stroke. SEE *Slash*.
*œ* (oe), 6.1d
*of*, *4.3*, *4.4* SEE ALSO *and*, *for*, *of*, *the*, *with*
Old and Middle English, 16.8
Omission dash, 3.5

Omission sign, 17.7d, 20.5
Omissions,
in dates, indicated by apostrophe, 3.2b
in inclusive dates, indicated by blank, 3.3
of letters, indicated by apostrophe, 2.4a,
12.1d(2)
of letters indicated by dots, 15.4
of letters, indicated by hyphens, 15.4
of numbers, indicated by apostrophe,
3.2b
of pages, 17.7d
of paragraph, indicated by ellipsis, 15.3c
of pictures, 19.1a
of text, 20.5
of words, indicated by asterisks, 15.3
of words, indicated by dash, 3.5
of words, indicated by ellipsis, 15.3

*one*, 9.2c. SEE ALSO *Initial-letter contractions*
*ong*, 10.1a. SEE ALSO *Final-letter contractions*

Order of punctuation marks and composition
signs, 15.7

Ordinal endings,
with arabic numerals, 5.5, 12.3b
contractions used in, 5.5, 14.1e
foreign, 14.1e
with roman numerals, 14.1e

Ordinal numbers, 5.4
*ou*, 5.1, 5.3
*ought*, 9.2b
*ound*, 10.1a. SEE ALSO *Final-letter contractions*
*ount*, 10.1a. SEE ALSO *Final-letter contractions*
*out*, 5.1, 5.2

Outlines, T2.1g(2), 18.5
*ow*, 6.1
as exclamation, 6.4

Page numbers,
on contents pages, 19.2f
omission or repetition of, 17.7c-d
on title pages, 19.2b(12)

Pagination,
of exercises, xiv
literary style, 17.7, 17.7a
of preliminary pages, 19.2a
textbook style, 17.7, 17.7b, 19.2a[note],
20.1
of text pages, 19.3a

Paper, braille, xii

Paragraphing, 2.2

Paragraph headings, 17.1c
Paragraphs,
blank line between, 2.2
indention of, 2.2
letters at beginning of, 2.2
more than one in italics, 15.1i
more than one in quotation marks, 3.1
words at beginning in different typeface, 17.1c
Parentheses, 3.3
abbreviations enclosed in, 13.2g
before emphasis indicator, 15.1a(2), 15.7
missing numbers within, 3.3
enclosing letters or portions of words, 15.11
enclosing single letters in outlines, 12.1g(2)
enclosing letters in regular text, 12.1g(1)
next to to, into, by, 8.1c
part, 9.1, 9.2e. See also Initial-letter contractions
Participles, 6.6c
Parts of speech, 2.4a(3), 6.6
Part-word contractions, 4.5
one-cell. See also
and, for, of, the, with;
ar, ed, er, gh, ow, ble, ing;
bb, cc, dd, ff, gg, ea;
be, con, dis, and com;
ch, sh, th, wh, ou, st
lower signs. See Lower-sign contractions
rules for, 4.5
with slash, 5.4
standing alone, 6.4
two-cell. See Initial-letter contractions; Final-letter contractions
Percent symbol (%), 13.1b
Period, 2.3
in abbreviations, 13.2
with ellipsis, 15.3a
with initials, 13.3
Perkins braille writer, xiii
Personal initials, 13.3
Pictures and picture captions, 19.1a
Plural forms,
of abbreviations, 15.8a
of letters, 12.1d(2)
of numbers, 12.3a
of words, 2.4a(4)
Poetry,
footnotes in, 18.2b
indentation patterns in, 18.2b
line symbol in, 18.2a
numbered lines in, 18.2b
in preliminary pages, 19.2h(5)
in prose form, 18.2a
scansion or stress marks in, 18.2b
standard format, 18.2b
Portions of words,
in different typeface, 15.8
emphasized, 15.8b
enclosed in brackets or parentheses, 15.11
freestanding, 15.10
in quotation marks, 15.1h
with to, into, or by, 15.10
Possessive forms, use of single-letter contractions in, 4.2a
Postal abbreviations, 13.2c
Postal districts and zip codes, 13.7
Preface, 19.3c
Preferred contractions. See also Alternative contractions
Prefixes, 2.4a, 4.5b(1), 5.3a, 6.1a, 7.3b, 8.2b-c, 10.1c
more than one prefix, 7.7
Preliminary pages, 19.2
order of, 19.2, 19.4
page numbering of, 19.2a
summary, 19.4
in typescript, 20.4
Prime and double prime, 13.1b
Print errors, 20.7
Print page indicator, 17.7b
Print symbol indicator, 13.1e, 15.12
Prologue, 19.3c
Proofreading, xv, 20.8
Pronunciation,
effect of contraction usage on, 4.4,
6.1e-f, 8.2c, 8.2f, 9.1a-b, 10.1g,
12.5b(3)
short-forms affecting, 11.7
Proper names, see Names
Publisher information on title page, 19.2b(6)
Punctuation,
with abbreviations, 13.1
ellipsis with period, 15.3a
in foreign languages, 16.4
with single letters, 12.1d
with lower signs, 7.2a, 7.5c
with to, into, and by, 8.1c
Punctuation marks,
foreign, 16.4
effect of emphasis indicator upon, 15.1b
order of, 15.7

TOC -- INDEX

Index-10
standing alone or enclosed, 15.12
with whole-word lower sign contractions, 7.2a

Question mark, 2.3
in Spanish, 16.4b
Quotation marks, double and single, 3.1
abbreviations enclosed in, 13.2h
foreign (dashes, inverted, guillemets), 16.7a
foreign words in, 16.3a
before emphasis indicator, 15.1a(2)
enclosing more than one paragraph, 3.1
reversal of, 3.1
enclosing single letters, 15.1g
next to to, into, by, 8.1c
Quoted or displayed matter, 15.5
italicized words within, 15.1h
in both italics and quotation marks, 15.1h

Radio call letters, 13.6
Reading practice, xiii
Recipes, 18.7
Reference citations, 17.5a
Reference symbols, 17.3
References, 17.2
abbreviations in, 17.5, 17.5b(3)
biblical, 17.5b
decimal point in, 17.5a
letter indicator in, 17.5a
numbered or lettered, 17.2
position of, 17.3
roman numerals in, 14.1c, 17.5a
Repetition sign, 17.7c, 20.5
Reviews, 19.2h(2)
Roman numerals, 14.1a
in biblical references, 17.5b(2)
confused with contractions, 14.1f
with hyphen or dash, 14.1b
letters, preceded by, 14.1d
letter indicator with, 14.1a
with ordinal endings, 14.1e
in page numbers, 14.1c
in reference numbers, 14.1c, 17.5a
Running heads, 17.1d
ry, words ending in, 6.1b

Sandwich contractions, 8.2a
Scientific terminology, 16.6c
Section numbers, 17.5a
Section symbol (§), 13.1b
Semicolon, 2.3

Sentence, incomplete, 2.5a, 15.3a
Series of italicized titles, 15.1f
Series of items italicized for different reasons, 15.1e
sh, 5.1, 5.3
as admonition to silence, 5.3d
shall, 5.1, 5.2
Short-form words, 7.10, 8.3, 9.7, 10.2, 11.1
and abbreviations, 13.2d
after, blind, friend, special rules for, 11.5
capitalization of, 11.2
in compound words, 11.4
in conflict with contractions, 11.3a
divided between lines, 11.3a, 11.6
following lower-cell, whole-word
contractions, 8.3, 11.2
foreign letters mistaken for, 16.3b(2)
not used if misspelling occurs, 11.3, 11.3c
in names, 11.8
must retain original meaning, 11.3
with prefix, 11.3b
with stammering, 12.5a
with suffix, 11.3c
in syllabicated words, 12.6a(1)
to, into, and by, preceded by, 11.2
not used in unusual words, 11.7
Silent thought, indicated by italics, 15.1, 15.1j
Simulated braille, xi, xiii, 20.1
Single-letter contractions, 4.2
Single-letter beginning and ending syllables.
See Syllable division
Single letters, 12.1a
contractions with, 12.1c
with slash, 12.1d(3)
Sion, 10.1a. See also Final-letter contractions
as word, 10.1b
Slash, 2.6a, 3.6, 4.2c, 4.3c, 5.4, 12.1d(3)
with single-letter abbreviations, 13.2f
with composition signs, 3.6a
with contractions, 4.2c, 4.3c, 5.4
with divided words, 3.6c
in partially emphasized expressions, 15.9
in fractions (fraction line), 14.2a
with italicized words, 15.1a
with letters, 12.1d(3)
between numbers other than fractions, 14.2b
with numbers, 2.6a, 3.6b, 14.2a-b
in poetry written as prose, 18.2a
Slate and stylus, xiii, 1.2, App. B
Small capital letters, 15.2
Solid compound words. See Compound (solid) words.

Solidus. See Slash.

some, 9.2d. See also Initial-letter contractions.

Sound elongation, 12.5b, 12.5b(1).

Sound imitations, 12.5b, 12.5b(1).

Source references, 17.5. See also References.

Spanish punctuation marks, 16.4b.

Special formats. See Formats.

Special symbols page, 19.2d.

Specialized terminology, 16.6c.

Speech hesitation, 12.5b, 12.5b(1).

letter indicator not used, 12.5.

Speech mannerisms, 12.5.

Spelled-out words, 12.6b.

Spelling, 12.6a(2).

archaic, 16.8.

foreign and English words spelled alike, 16.3b(1).

Sports scores, 2.6c, 14.8.

st, 5.1, 5.3.

abbreviation for saint or street, 5.3e.

ordinal ending, 5.5.

Stammering, 12.5a.

dividing between lines, 12.5a.

letter sign not used, 12.5.

Stanzas, 18.2b.

Sterling coinage, 13.1g.

Structuring, 20.3.

still, 5.1, 5.2.

Stock quotations, 14.3.

Stressed English syllables, 16.1.

Subscript numbers and letters, 14.6.

Subtitles, 19.2b(4).

Suffixes, 2.4a, 4.5b(1), 6.1b, 8.2d, 10.1d.

er and ed, 6.1d.

ry and ery, 6.1b.

with short-forms, 11.3c.

Summaries,

rules for all part-word contractions, 4.5.

of contraction usage. See end of Lessons 6, 8, and 11.

rules for emphasis indicator, 15.1j.

rules for letter indicator, 12.4.

of contraction usage in names, 11.9.

order of preliminary and text pages, 19.4.

Superscript numbers and letters, 14.6.

as reference markers, 17.2.

Syllable division, 2.4a(1), 6.6.

contractions as last syllable, 6.1.

major and minor syllable divisions, 4.5b, 5.3.

single letter beginning and ending syllables, 2.4a.

Syllabicated words,

be, con, dis in, 7.5c.

for dramatic effect, 12.6a(1).

final-letter contractions in, 10.1e.

one-cell, whole-word contractions in, 4.2b.

in word analysis or spelling, 12.6a(2).

Symbols, 13.1.

dividing between lines, 13.1f.

having no braille equivalent, 13.1h, 14.6.

letter indicator with, 13.1a.

print symbol indicator, 13.1e.

Table of contents. See Contents, table of Tables, 18.4.

Telephone numbers, 13.6.

Termination symbol, 15.6.

Text,

break in, 19.1c.

first page of, 19.3b.

text page numbering of, 19.3a.

Textbook formatting certification, 17.7b.

Textbook style pagination. See Pagination.

th, 5.1, 5.3.

in dialect, 12.5b(3).

in lisped words, 12.5b(2).

in ordinal endings, 5.5.

the, 4.3, 4.4. See also and, for, of, the, with.

Thermoformed braille, 20.1.

this, 5.1, 5.2.

Time (clock), 14.7a-b.

tion, 10.1a. See also Final-letter contractions.

tion and ation, 10.1d(1).

title page, 19.2b.

author on, 19.2b(5).

blank lines on, 19.2b(2).

capitalization used on, 19.2b(3).

centering lines on, 19.2b(1).

copyright information on, 19.2b(8).

ISBN on, 19.2b(9).

page numbers on, 19.2b(12).

permission to publish, 19.2b(7).

publisher on, 19.2b(6).

state abbreviations used on, 19.2b(11).

title and subtitle on, 19.2b(4).

transcriber's information on, 19.2b(10).

volume number on, 19.2b(12).

Index-12
Titles. See Names

To, into, by, 8.1
with composition signs, 8.1b
with other contractions, 8.1d
at end of braille line, 8.1e
with foreign words, 16.3a
with italic indicator, 15.1c(2)
joined to each other, 8.1d
with non-Latin indicator, 16.7b
with portions of words, 15.10
as proper names, 8.1f
with punctuation signs, 8.1c
before short-form words, 8.3
with stammering, 12.5a

Trial manuscript,
accuracy and neatness, 20.5
certification, 20.13
content of, 20.1
editing of text in, 20.7
erasures in, 20.6
grading of, 20.11
letter to grader of, 20.9
mailing instructions, xvi, 20.1, 20.10
omission or repetition of text in, 20.5
preliminary pages in, 20.4
proofreading of, 20.8
structuring, 20.3
table of contents in, 20.2
title page of, 19.2b

Transcriber's note (TN), 12.7, 14.6
Transcriber's notes page, 12.7, 19.2e, 19.3b
Transcriber's note symbol, 12.7
Translation programs. See Braille computer programs

Transposing print material, 19.3b
Trigraphs, 6.1d
with ea contraction, 8.2g
with final-letter contractions, 10.1f

Uncontracted braille, 12.6a(2), 15.8b

Underlining, 15.1
usual form of word, retaining, 6.3, 7.7, 8.2b, 10.1c, 10.1d, 10.1d(2), 11.6

Virgule. See Slash
Vocal sounds, 12.2
Volume numbers on title page, 19.2b(12)
Volumes,
end-of-volume indication, 19.9
size and division of, 19.7
Votes, 2.6c, 14.8

Was, 7.1. See also Lower-sign contractions

Web site addresses, 14.9

Were, 7.1. See also Lower-sign contractions

words, 5.1, 5.3
which, 5.7, 5.2

Whole-word contractions,
and abbreviations, 13.2c
in hyphenated compound words, 7.2b
italicized, 15.1c(2)
lower signs. See in, enough, be, his, was,
were; Lower-sign contractions; to, into, by

one cell. See alphabet contractions; and, for,
of, the, with; child, shall, this, which,
out, still

preceded by composition signs, 7.2a
confused with roman numerals, 14.1e
two-cell. See Initial-letter contractions
with slash, 5.4

in syllabicated words, 12.6a(1)
with, 4.3, 4.4. See also and, for, of, the, with

Word analysis, 12.6a(2)

Word endings, see Suffixes

Word/number combinations, 2.6b, 12.3c

Words, coined, 16.6b

Words, divided, 2.4
analyzed, 12.6a(2)
be, con, and dis in, 7.5a
ble in, 6.2
com in, 7.6
compound words, 2.4b
containing lower signs, 7.4
contractions sacrificed in, 4.5d, 7.4
final-letter contractions in, 10.1a
foreign, 16.3c
italicized, 15.1a(1)
partially emphasized, 15.8b
plural, 2.4a(4)
short-forms in, 11.3a, 11.6
single letter beginning and ending syllables, 2.4a

single-syllable words, 2.4a
slash in, 3.6c
spelled-out words, 12.6b
stammered words, 12.5a
syllabicated words, 12.6a
with termination sign, 15.8c
in trial manuscript, 20.4
under study, 12.6a(2)
in words with portions emphasized, 15.6
Words, divided between lines, 2.4a, 12.1g(2) [note]
Words, divided between pages, 2.4a, 12.1g(2) [note]
Words, divided into syllables. See Syllabicated words
World Braille Usage, 16.1

you're, 4.2a, 12.5b(3)

Zip codes, 13.7